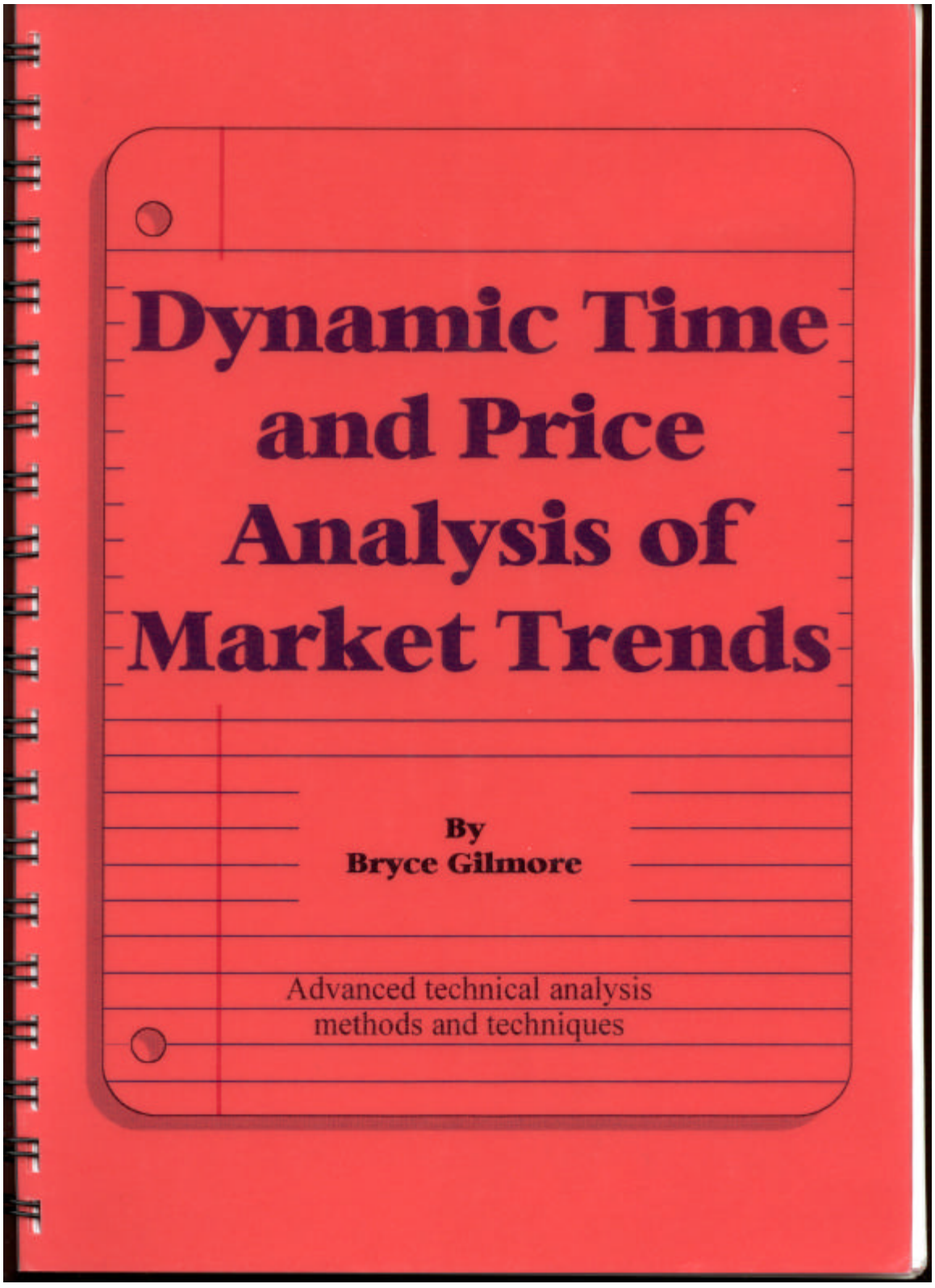

Dynamic Time and Price Analysis of Market Trends
By
Bryce Gilmore
Advanced technical analysis
methods and techniques

# Table of Contents

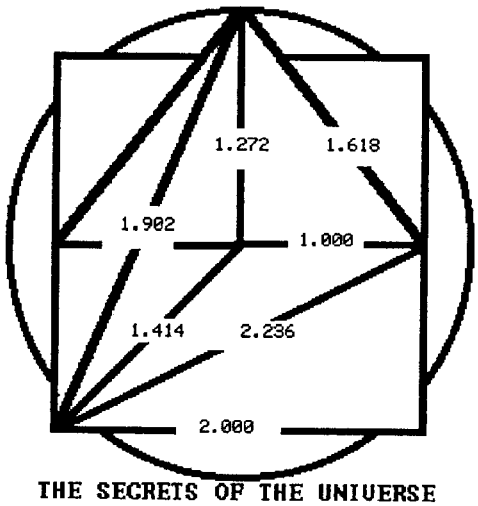
# 1
# Sacred Geometry

Time & Price Analysis of Market Trends is a mathematical approach for comparing the relationships between market highs and lows in both time and price amplitude.

Teachers in the centers of education throughout the ancient world, such as those founded by PYTHAGORAS & PLATO set their pupils to practice the arts of DYNAMIC GEOMETRY and NUMEROLOGY in order to exercise the faculty of intuition.

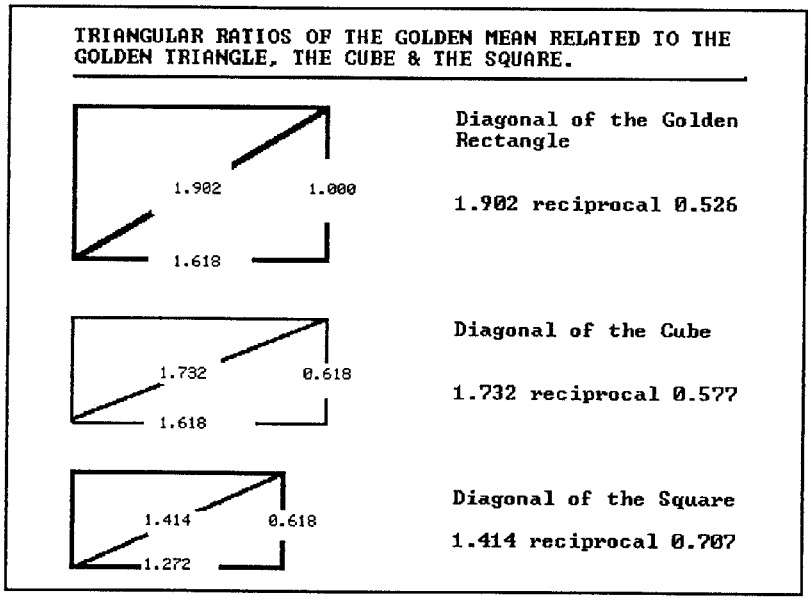
The ancients taught that any situation in life may be represented by a DYNAMIC PATTERN for which there exists a precedent in nature. GEOMETRY deals with pure form, philosophical geometry re-enacts the unfolding of each form out of the preceding one.

The ancients devised a canon of proportion. The canon demonstrates the squaring of the circle and the binding relationships between the SQUARE, CIRCLE & the GOLDEN MEAN. The circumference of the CIRCLE is equal to the PERIMETER of the SQUARE.




THE SECRETS OF THE UNIVERSE

Using Geometry we can prove the ratio 1.618 maintains a triangular relationship with the square, the cube and the circle. This association is extremely important for our purposes because all Geometric forms must rotate from one axis to another if they are to continue too relate in the future.




**1.414** **The diagonal of the SQUARE**

**1.732** **The diagonal of the CUBE**

The key **geometric** ratios for Time and Price analysis purposes are:-

**EXPANDING GEOMETRIC RATIO SERIES =**

**1.000** 1.272 **1.618** 2.058 **2.618** 3.33

**CONTRACTING GEOMETRIC RATIO SERIES =**

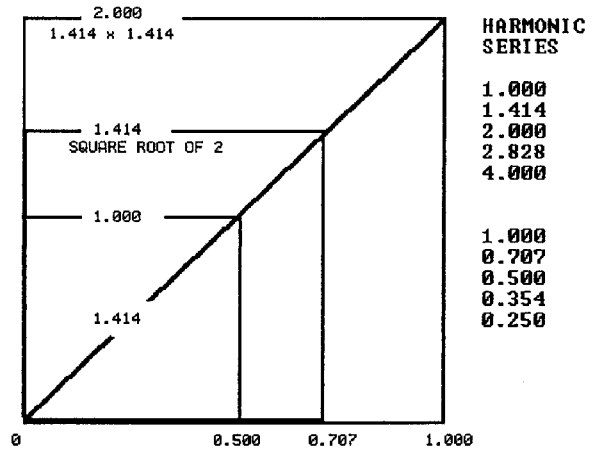
0.786 **0.618** 0.486 **0.382** 0.300 0.236

## Harmonic Ratio Series of the SQUARE

HARMONIC RATIOS are generated from the diagonal relationships found within the SQUARE. Musical notes vibrate on ratios of the square. HARMONIC RATIOS relate to the number 2 and square root of 2.

**SQUARE ROOT OF 2 = 1.4142** **SACRED CUT = 0.707**

The Sacred Cut 0.7071 is equally as important as 0.618 when dealing with proportion. Later on we will see how the two ratios integrate the unfolding geometry within a markets structure.




**HARMONIC PROPORTIONS FORMED BY THE SQUARE**

W.D. Gann is famous for his use of the ratios in the square and the cube in his analysis of time and price in market trends.

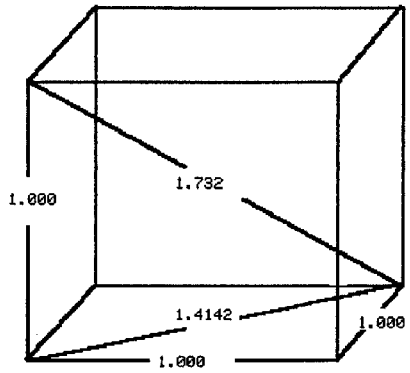
**EXPANDING HARMONIC SERIES =**
**1.000, 1.4142, 2.000, 2.828, 4.000,** 5.656

**CONTRACTING HARMONIC SERIES =**
**1.000, 0.7071, 0.500, 0.354, 0.250,** 0.177

## Third Dimension of the Square

The diagonal of the cube can be used to form a ratio series that continues to hold its pure geometric form in a similar manner to the geometric and harmonic ratio series.

**SQUARE ROOT OF 3 = 1.732** **RECIPROCAL = 0.577**




THIRD DIMENSION
OF THE SQUARE

PRODUCES RATIOS

1.000
1.414
1.732

1.000
0.707
0.577

DIAGONAL OF THE CUBE = 1.732
RECIPROCAL OF 1.732 = 0.577

If you review the diagrams on 1-3 you will see how the square root of 3 also can relate to the geometric ratios 1.618 and 0.618 and the square root of 2 relates via the square root of 1.618 (1.272).

The system of ratio relationships evolves in a strict manner and leaves nothing to chance.

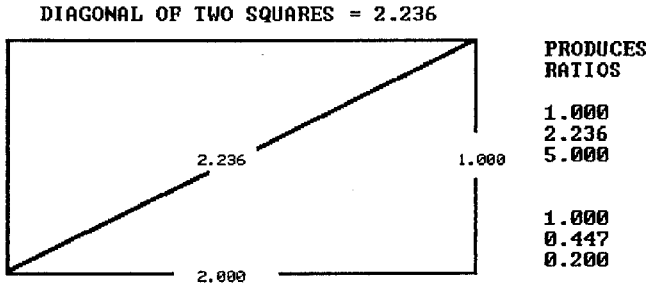
**EXPANDING 3rd Dimension HARMONIC SERIES =**
**1.000, 1.732, 3.000, 5.2, 9.000**

**CONTRACTING 3rd Dimension HARMONIC SERIES =**
**1.000, 0.577, 0.333, 0.192, 0.111**

## The 4th Dimension of the Square

The diagonal of 2 squares, ie., a rectangle with a side 2 and a height of 1.

**SQUARE ROOT OF 5 = 2.236 RECIPROCAL = 0.447**




**An interesting relationship of root 5 is:- 2.236 = 1.618 + 0.618**

## Arithmetic Ratios

ARITHMETIC RATIOS are generated from the simple division of whole numbers by other whole numbers. A few examples are listed below.

2/3 = 0.667 3/4 = 0.75 7/8 = 0.875 3/2 = 1.500

Arithmetic ratios will play a part in the construction between the major cardinal ratios.

If you wish to make a complete study of these ratios and their origins I would recommend the book **SACRED GEOMETRY** by Robert Lawlor, published by THAMES & HUDSON.

## Cardinal Ratios in Geometry

To summarise this introduction to Sacred Geometry, the most important geometric ratio is:- **1.000**

After which come the Cardinal ratios, Rhythm ratios and then the Arithmetic ratios.

The Cardinal ratios of contracting and expanding forms are:-

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Contracting** | | | | | |
| **0.333** | **0.447** | **0.500** | **0.577** | **0.618** | **0.707** |
| **Expanding** | | | | | |
| **3.000** | **2.236** | **2.000** | **1.732** | **1.618** | **1.414** |

**Rhythm ratios are:-**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Golden Mean** | | | | | |
| Contracting | 0.236 | 0.300 | 0.486 | 0.618 | 0.786 |
| Expanding | 1.272 | 1.618 | 2.058 | 2.618 | 3.33 |
| **Square** | | | | | |
| Contracting | 0.177 | 0.250 | 0.354 | 0.500 | 0.707 |
| Expanding | 1.414 | 2.000 | 2.828 | 4.000 | 5.656 |
| **Cube** | | | | | |
| Contracting | 0.111 | 0.192 | 0.333 | 0.577 | |
| Expanding | 1.732 | 3.000 | 5.2 | 9.000 | |
| **Rectangle** | | | | | |
| Contracting | 0.200 | 0.447 | | | |
| Expanding | 2.236 | 5.000 | | | |

These ratios and their origins need to become second nature to the Time and Price Analyst.

# 2

# Introduction to Time & Price

Time and price analysis requires the use of charts to plot the price history of a market or index. Charts have two dimensions, the horizontal for TIME and the vertical for PRICE.

A chart is like a road map to a technical analyst. It provides us with a pictorial view of the markets past activity. By analysing the past we can learn the characteristics and habits of a market.

**TIME & PRICE ANALYSIS is about identifying the market price levels where support or resistance is likely to eventuate.**

**Price support & resistance levels can be determined mathematically using the past price activity.**

**Each individual market will develop its own CYCLES. These cycles will relate to future time duration between market highs and lows.**

**The future is just a repetition of the past in another geometric form.**

Price highs and lows, prior bull market and bear trends, will relate geometrically to each other in TIME & PRICE. Often they will relate in very simple ratios, other times they can be quite complicated to recognise, unless you can understand the intricacies of the geometric forms.

It is the purpose of this manual, to provide you with a complete knowledge of the tools available, to recognise when a market has reached a support price or a resistance price.
With this knowledge you will know when it is opportune to buy or sell.

**The tools and methodologies I will teach you are DYNAMIC in nature, that is why this manual is named:-**

**DYNAMIC TIME & PRICE ANALYSIS OF MARKET TRENDS**

**DYNAMIC** - means comparing actual price and time and evaluating the proportional relationship.

The secret to becoming a professional technical analyst is to keep it simple. The more you complicate the issues, the harder it is to recognise the order between the unfolding patterns.

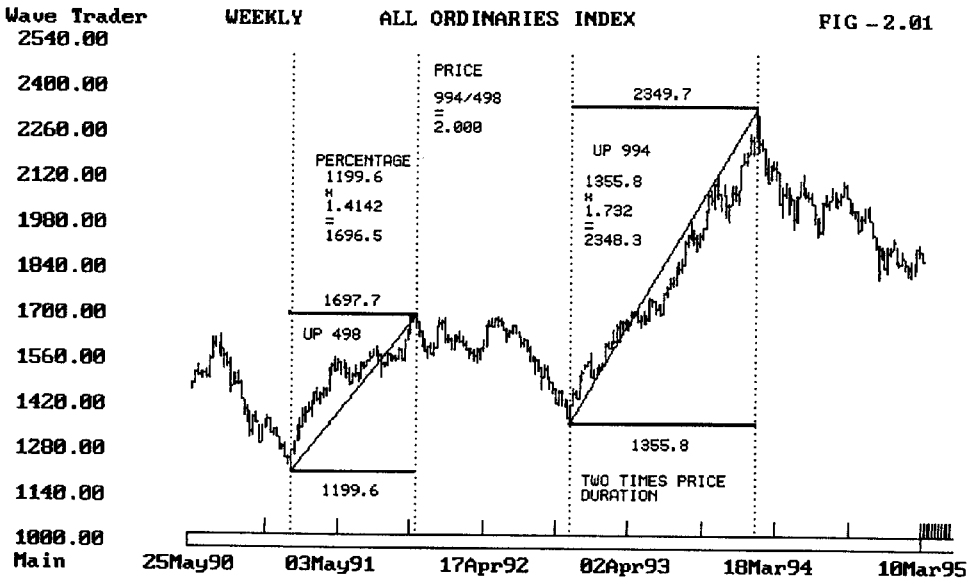
To get started, here is an actual example of PRICE which occurred in the Australian Share Market Index known as the ALL ORDINARIES INDEX.

There are three unmistakable instances of PRICE PROPORTION in this example for the expert and novice analyst to take note of:-

**Price relationships of:-**
**2.000 1.4142 1.732**

1. The price rise in each bull market related by a factor of 2.000.

In 1991 the bull market rose 498 points, between 1992 and 1994 the next bull market rose 994 points 2 points short of exactly twice.



2. The 1991 bull market rose from its low of 1199.6 by a factor of **1.4142**

1199.6 multiplied by the Square Root of 2 (1.4142) gave a target price of 1696.5

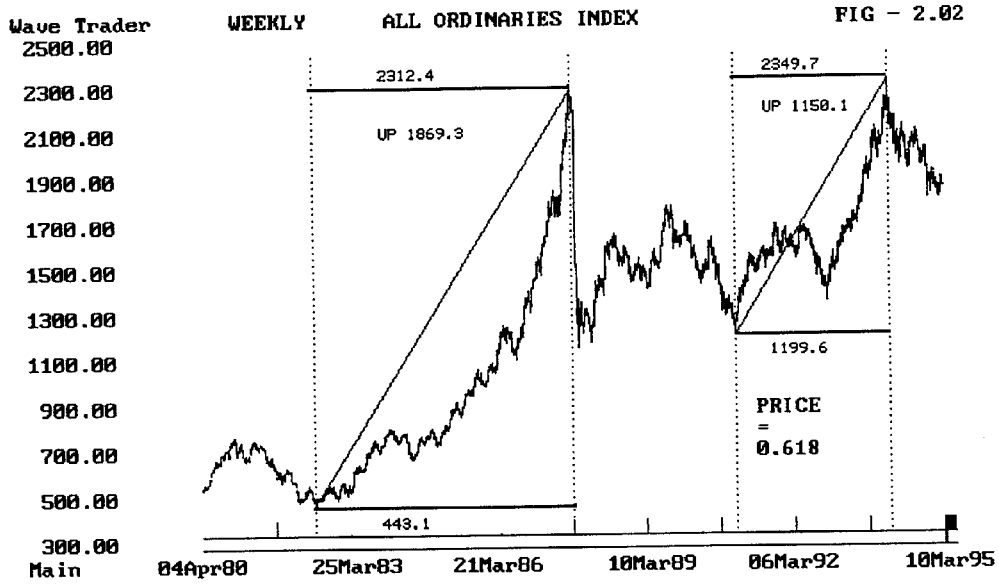
3. The 1992-94 bull market rose from its low of 1355.8 by a factor of **1.732**

1355.8 multiplied by the Square Root of 3 (1.732) gave a target price 2348.3

PRICE PROPORTION at the 1994 high was also evidenced in a much larger degree when compared to the 1982-87 range from the 1991 low.
The unfolding pattern of the 1991-1994 bull markets topped out as a proportion of the 1982-87 bull market on **0.618.**

The 1982-87 bull market rise was 1870 points (13 x 144), the total rise in points from the 1991 low to the 1994 high was 1150 points (8 x 144), ie., 8 - 13 = **0.618**

* Gann taught students to count off price increments in squares of 144 degrees of price and 144 degrees of time.



The first question I ask myself when I witness GEOMETRY of price ranges such as this is, "How could this activity be random"?

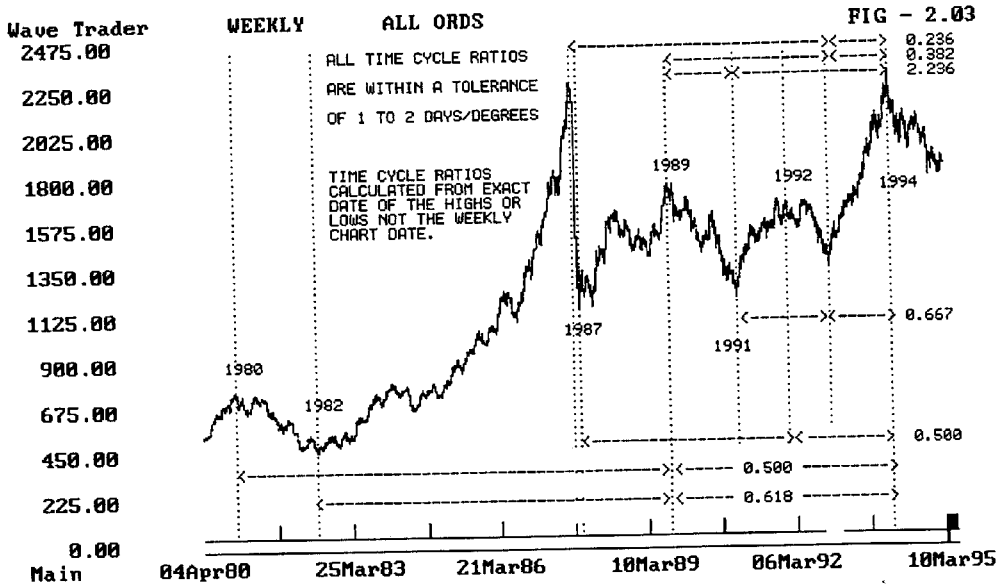
To be absolutely sure you are not looking at a random event you must confirm TIME has related in a degree which can be identified using the same principles.

When dealing with major market changes of trend there should be evidence of DYNAMIC RATIOS OF TIME between trend changes of similar degree.

TIME PROPORTION RELATIONSHIPS are often easier to monitor than price relationships. This is because time can only move on one axis whereas price relationships can be formed in either price units or percentage change relationships.

I have found after years of experience that TIME is the underlying reason why markets reverse trend. As Gann taught, "When time is up the trend must change."

R.N. ELLIOTT states in his theory, "All waves of similar degree will relate in TIME amplitude."



At first glance the TIME CYCLES illustrated in Fig 2.03 would appear quite complex to the novice analyst.

I like to keep things as simple as possible, so I look for relationships on major ratios such as 1.000, 1.618, 2.000, etc.,

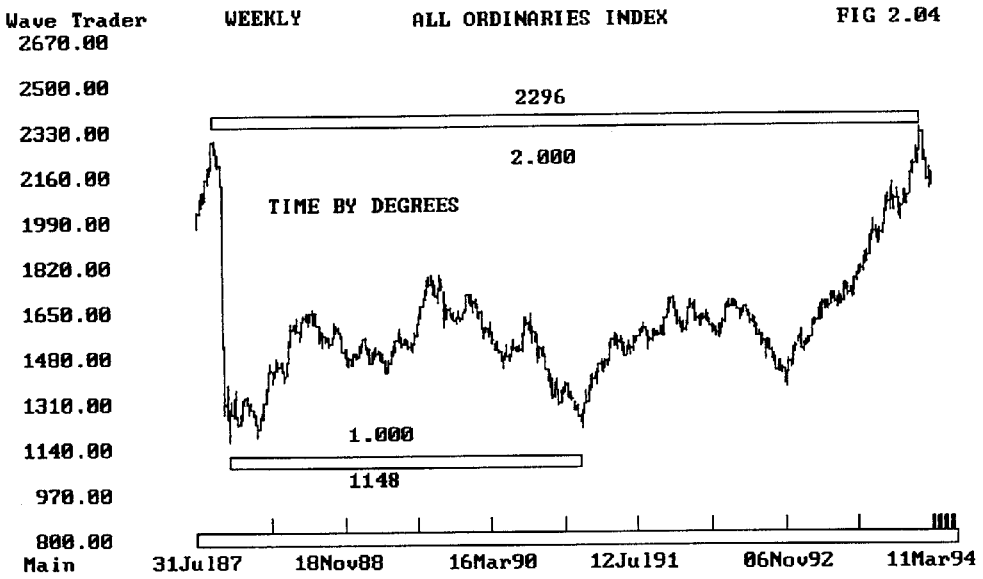
The evidence of CYCLES within markets can usually be seen easily with a little determination.

To illustrate this principle with the All Ordinaries Index high in 1994 I would look at the relationship between major lows and highs.
1987 was a major high - the date of the high was 21st September 1987.
1987 was a major low - the date of the low was 11th November 1987.
1991 was a major low - the date of the low was 17th January 1991.

The 1994 high date was 3rd February 1994.

**The time from the 1987 low to the 1991 low was 1148 degrees - the time from the 1987 high to the 1994 high was 2296 degrees. Exactly 2.000 times.**

The time in days was 1163 to 2327, 1 day over 2.000.



There is no purpose to be served by continuing these examples at this stage, it is more important for me to lay a foundation for you, so you would appreciate how important the observations were at the time they occurred.

What I hope I have pointed out so far are two things :-

1. Price ranges in trends are important to monitor.
.2. Time relationships between changes of trend are important.

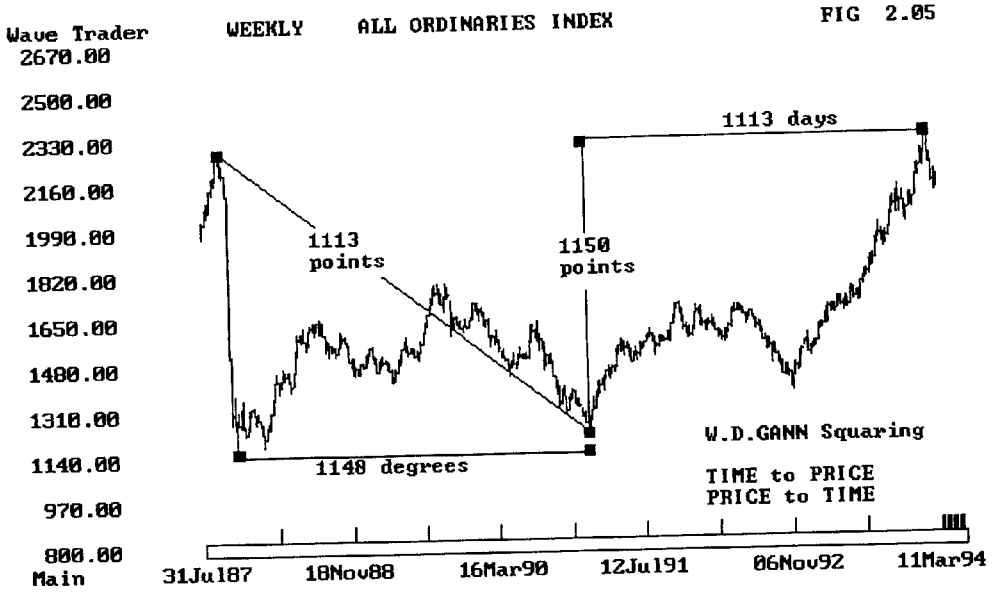
Each can be defined using the Canon of Proportion.

## W.D. Gann

To complete this introduction to TIME & PRICE ANALYSIS it would be wise to mention W.D. Gann once more.

W.D. Gann believed that PRICE & TIME could be inter-related, ie., TIME could be compared to PRICE and PRICE could be compared to TIME.

Gann called this technique SQUARING TIME to PRICE and PRICE to TIME. For most markets it is not practicable yet there is a good example of this principle at the 1994 high in the All Ordinaries Index.



## Conducting Time And Price Analysis

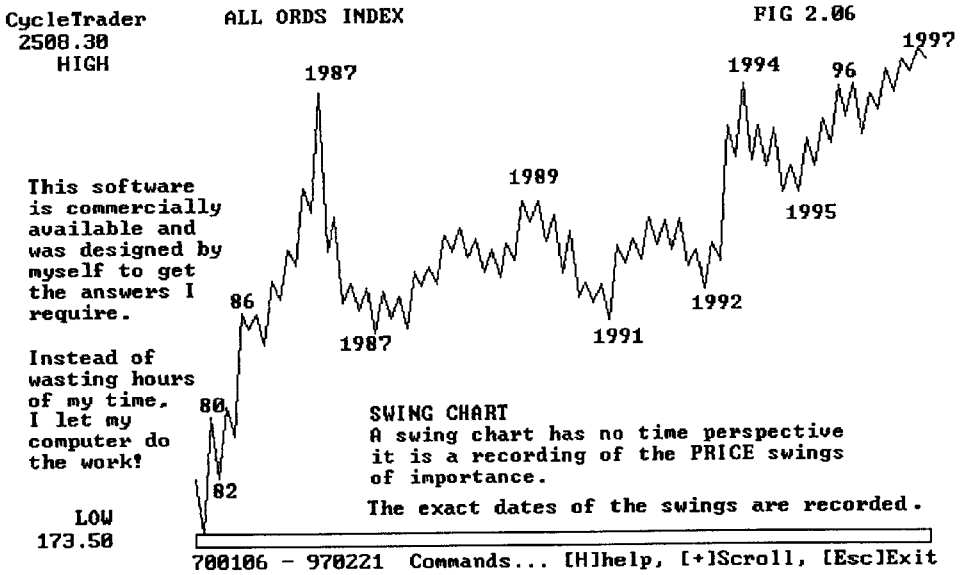
Can be time consuming to say the least, for years I struggled with ways to uncover the information I needed to know.
Finally I created an analysis package of my own design which allowed me to test and prove the principles I hold so true.

My requirement for TIME & PRICE ANALYSIS needs only the important dates and price levels where changes in trend of a tradeable nature have occurred.
For this I have created a simple SWING CHART system. Swing charts can be created in MINOR, INTERMEDIATE or MAJOR degree market swings.

**SWING CHARTS** also help eliminate the day to day noise from my analysis and keep my mind in perspective to the main trend.

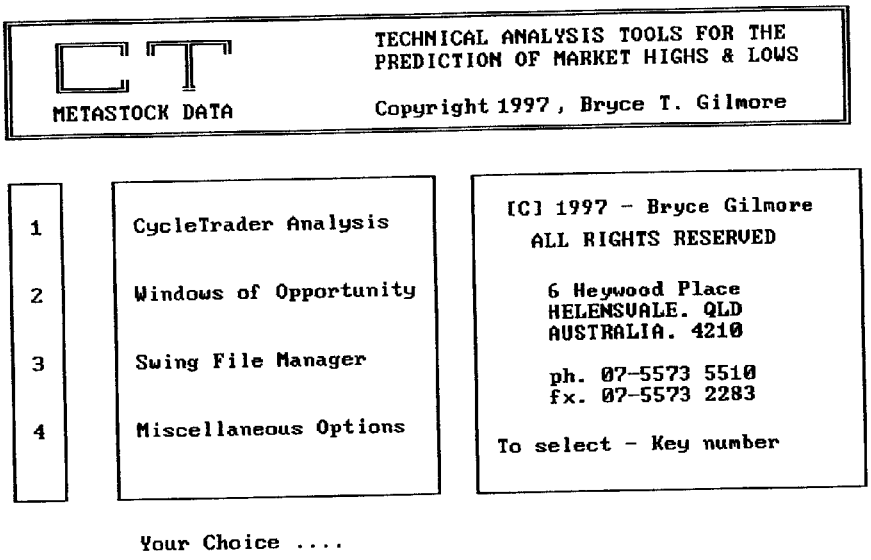
Most of the following examples of TIME and PRICE analysis will be demonstrated by my personal software CYCLETRADER. The routines I have developed automate the discovery process a trader needs to keep his mind on the job. It's no good to discover 3 weeks after a major change in trend things which could have influenced your opinion of the market.

Every trader needs technical information up to the minute if he is to control his emotions and move with the ebb and flow of the buyers and sellers.



A tradesman can only be as good as his tools, if you have the right tools, the right information on the subject at hand and a thorough knowledge of what you are doing, anything becomes easy.

I recommend you consider CYCLETRADER seriously if want to excel at understanding the TIME & PRICE relationships forever unfolding in all markets.




I have also authored 2 other books:-

Geometry of Markets [c] 1989
Geometry of Markets II [c] 1993

These cover my original research work into Elliott and Gann methodologies as well as my thoughts on how to implement a trading plan based on the technical analysis of TIME, PRICE, PATTERN & TREND INDICATORS.

# 3
# Price Measuring Techniques

Measuring the proportional relationships between market trends (market highs to lows / and or / lows to highs) is the best way to begin with PRICE ANALYSIS using geometric pattern identification.

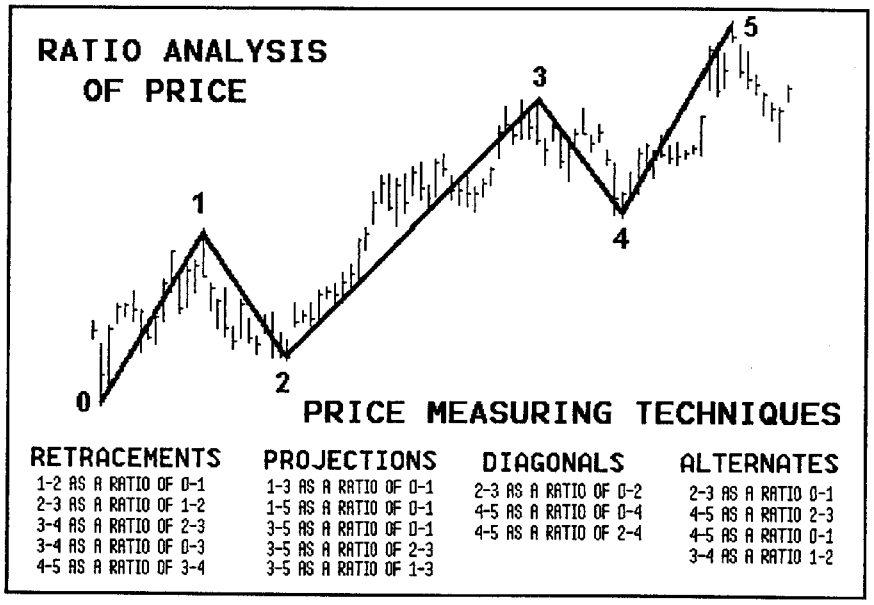
Relationships will form in several different ways :-

1. **Direct relationships.**

2. **Diagonal relationships.**

3. **Alternate relationships.**

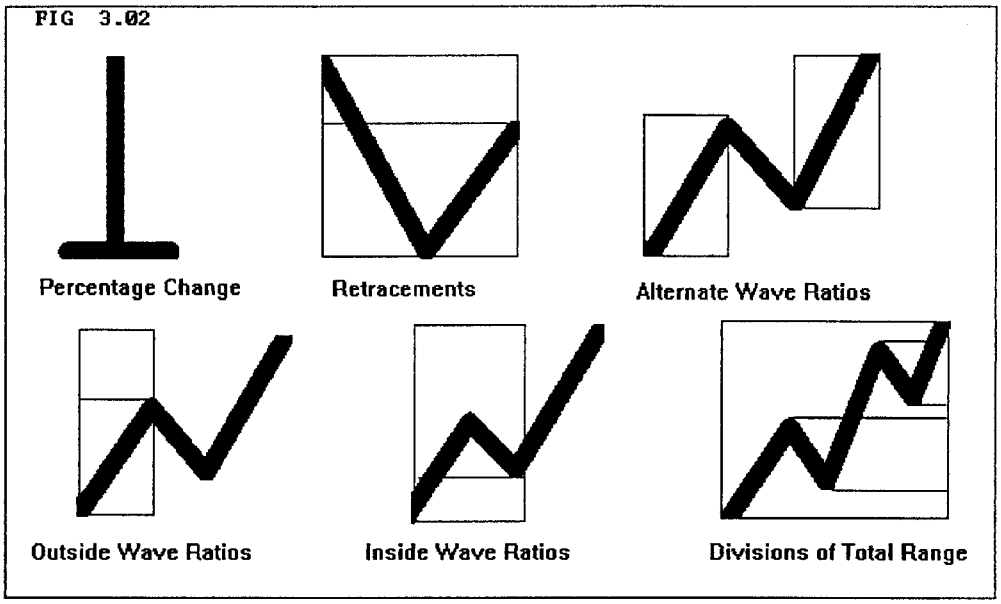
In each case we are comparing advances and declines as ratios to each other. The ratios in the square, cube or triangle. Occasionally relationships can be identified as relating to the circle.



## Dynamic Price Relationships

The following diagrams are a guide to the way RATIO RELATIONSHIPS form within market trends.

Each future market move is working out a price relationship to the past. Sometimes the relationship will relate in price units, other times the relationship will relate in percentage change. When neither of these associations are apparent there will be a relationship between VIBRATION. We will discuss this form of price/time analysis later on.




**R.N ELLIOTT states in his theory, "All waves of similar degree will relate in PRICE amplitude."**

1. **PRICE UNITS**
2. **PERCENTAGE CHANGE**

In any completed trend it should be clear that PRICE has related by at least 2 different methods of comparison.

## Direct Price Relationships

These are commonly known as price RETRACEMENTS. This is the first place to start with, mainly because this is the first introduction any chart reader gets to price analysis.

Ever since I can remember any technical analyst, I ever met, knew about price retracements. Mostly their knowledge was limited to simple relationships such as 38.2%, 50% & 61.8%.

For instance if a market rose in a bull trend 100 points, then reversed trend and found support 50 points below the high it would have made a 50% retracement.

Unfortunately for most traders and analysts, who have a limited knowledge of price retracements, the signalling for a reversal of trend depends on numerous other factors. These are :- the unfolding geometry of price & time. Analysts who trade 50% retracements without any other knowledge will lose money in the market 8 out of 10 times.

If you have been taught, to expect a reversal of trend at a retracement of 50% of the prior move, you will already be aware that trades taken at these levels have a 20% probability of success. Sometimes they work for a few days but then the market moves on and breaks the 50% support.

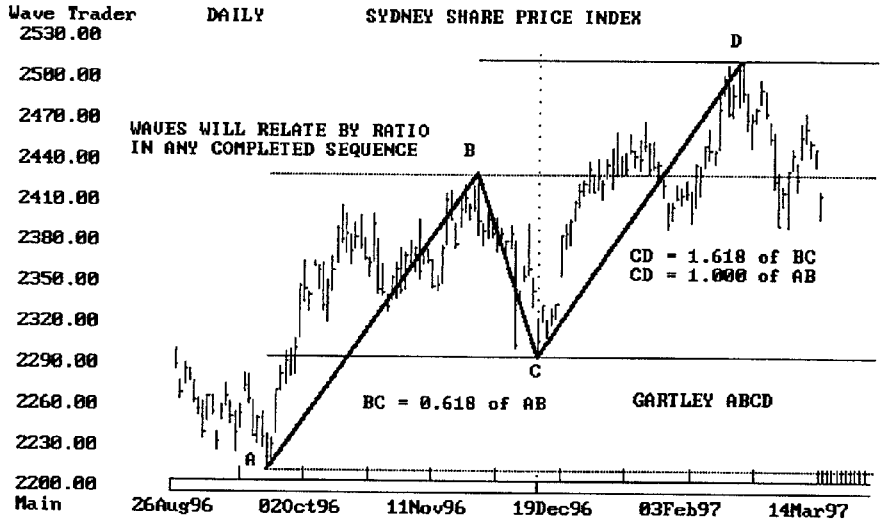



FIG. 3.03 DIRECT PRICE RELATIONSHIPS WITHIN MARKET TRENDS (ACTUAL)

## Diagonal Price Relationships

These types of price relationships are 3rd dimensional in the context of the market movement.

It would be great if the only ratios were 0.382, 0.500 and 0.618, 1.000, 1.618, 2.000 but this is not the case in the real world!

Nevertheless the above ratios do signal changes in trend 33.3% of the time.

The market is a continuous spiral of activity. Price relationships between significant highs and lows oscillate from one series of ratios to another.

The best way to confirm PRICE is with two or more confirmations. As well as with the combination of TIME CYCLE analysis.

When the Sydney Futures Exchange contract for the Share Price Index - Futures contract for hedging the All Ordinaries Index - made high on 7th August 1995 at 2199 the PRICE relationships were working internally as well as externally.

A signal like this confirms the 0.707 retracement level of the 1994 Bear market as important.

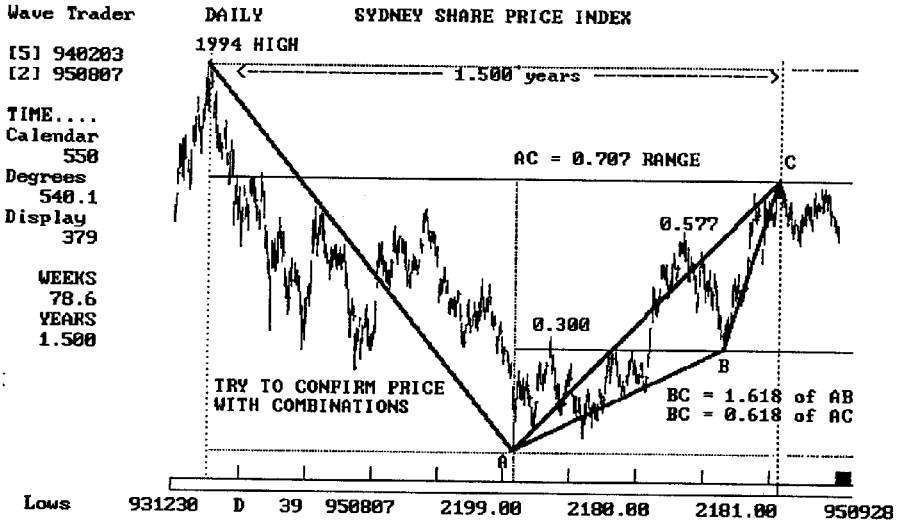



FIG. 3.04 DIAGONAL PRICE RELATIONSHIP COMBINED WITH A DIRECT PRICE

## Alternate Price Relationships

These types of price relationships are also 3rd dimensional in the context of the market movement.

When time is up it will be confirmed by PRICE.

July 17th, 1996 the Sydney Share Price Index made low at 2086 on very strong TIME.
The points decline from the previous highest high in the bull market from 1994 was 50% (288) of the total points decline in the 1994 bear market (575).

Incidentally both values are on the Gann square of 144.
144, 288, 432, 576, 720, 864, 1008, 1152, 1296, 1440

This is impressive behaviour for a market which is considered "random" by most people I encounter outside of the technical world.

Sometimes the numbers in price ranges hold a special significance to certain markets. As far as this market is concerned the "square" of 144 appears and reappears time after time.

Other often repeated numbers are 72, 90, 180, 216, 224, 256, 512.

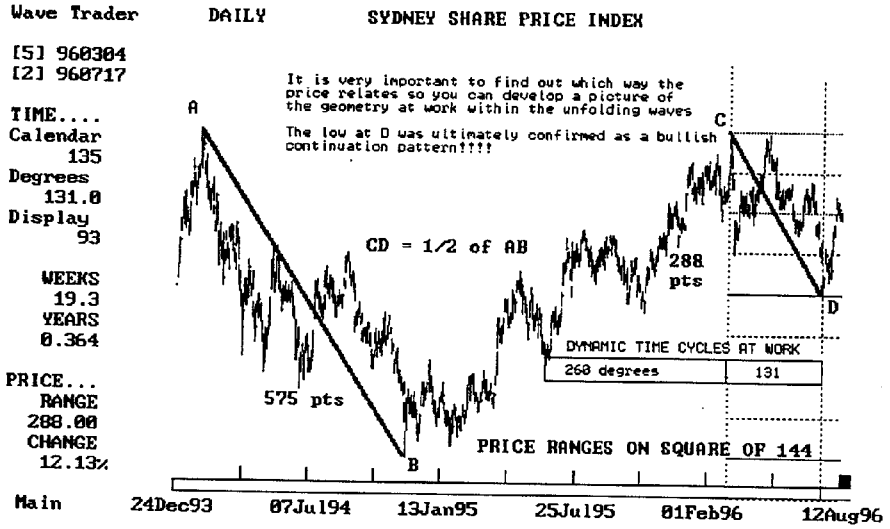
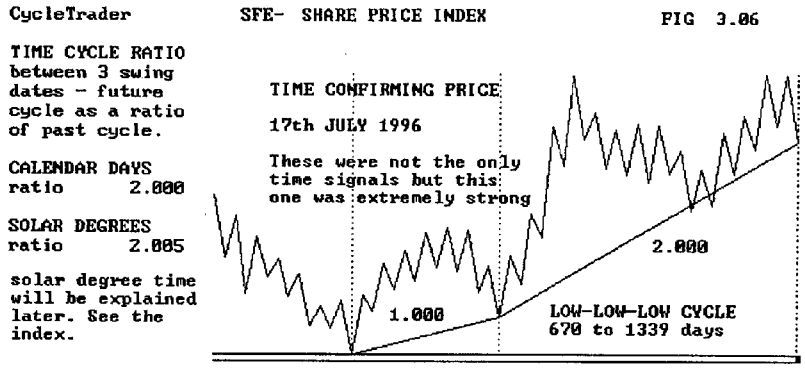
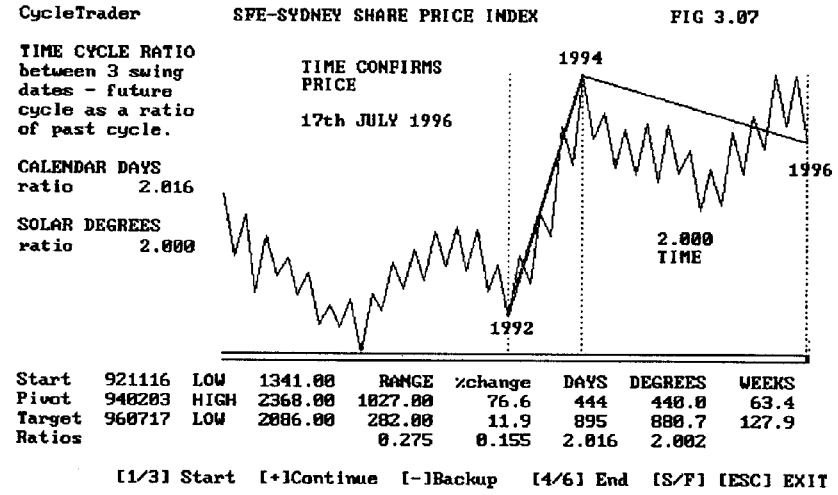



FIG. 3.05 ALTERNATE PRICE RELATIONSHIPS IN TRENDS OF SIMILAR DEGREE

## Time Confirms Price Action

In Fig 3.05 a perfect price relationship was reached right on several important TIME cycle ratios. Figs 3.06 and 3.07 show the long term time present for the area of the 17th July 1996.



## Percentage Change To Price

Percentage change to price between market tops and bottoms can often be a useful technical indication there is an order within the unfolding patterns.

GANN states in his teachings that price support and resistance occurs naturally at levels associated with the important ratios we are using for the dynamic time and price calculations.

For instance a 100% increase in value in a long-term trend would be a strong resistance level. Conversely a 50% decline of value would create a strong level for support. See W.D. Gann 10-9 where the ASX-All Ordinaries Index found support in 1987 after a decline in value of 50%.

Common expansions in value of 25%, 33.3%, 38.2%, 50%, 61.8% and 66.7% can be found in most markets. Currency markets tend to work to percentage gain or loss in major trends.

**100% gain 1991 to 1994 - SPI**
The gains made in the SFE-Sydney Share Price Index between the 1991 low of 1184 and the 1994 high 2368 was an exact increase in value of 100%.

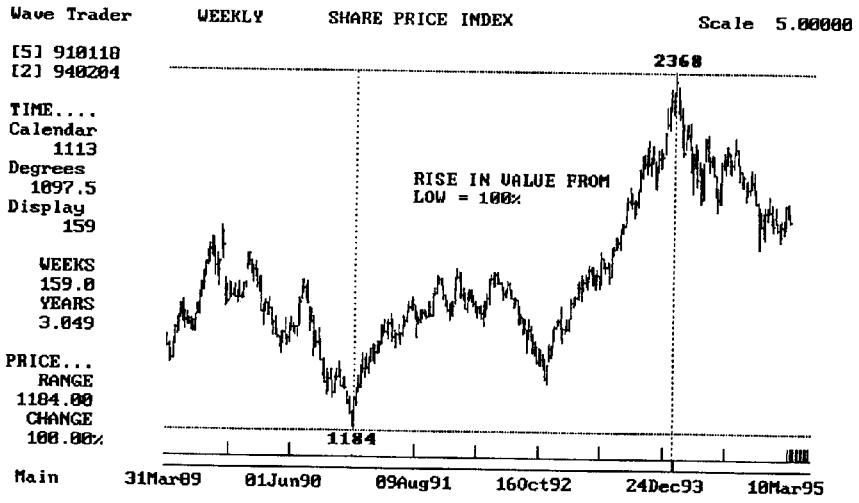



FIG. 3.08 PERCENTAGE CHANGE TO PRICE BETWEEN LOW AND HIGH

## Dynamic Percentage Change Relationships

Percentage change can be used to examine dynamic price relationships in trends of similar degree, in the same manner as price units.

Often when a relationship in price units cannot be found, the answer lies within the percentage change relationships.

Percentage change is a third dimension factor of price.

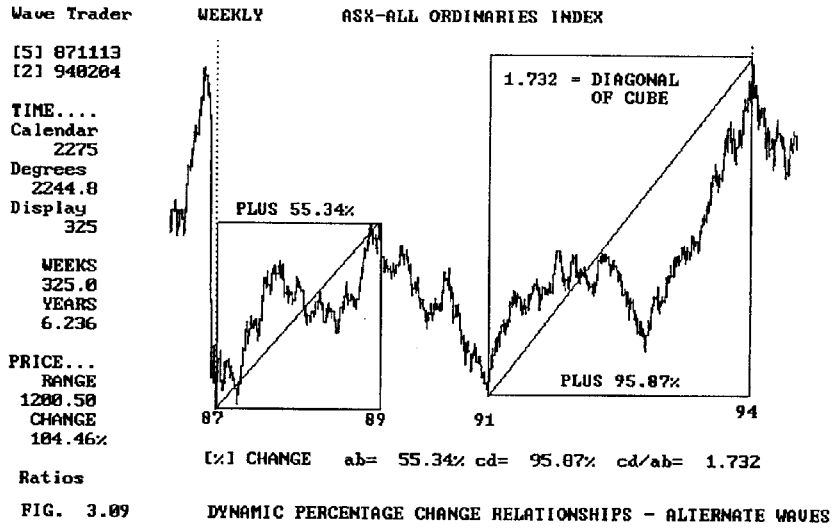



FIG. 3.09 DYNAMIC PERCENTAGE CHANGE RELATIONSHIPS - ALTERNATE WAVES

Whichever way the price of a commodity, stock, index or currency is quoted will often effect the way the geometry unfolds.

For instance, an old example from my second book Geometry of Markets II comes to mind when the IMM Deutsche Mark 1st Month Continuous contract made perfect geometric percentage gains and falls in three major degree waves. See Fig 3.10.

The low of 58.55 (920320) was also a 61.8% retracement of price in 38.2% of time. I remember it well because I predicted it well in advance, you can verify that one with Larry Pesavento.

## Geometry of Price

Use all of the tools all of the time. CycleTrader makes the interrogation of price relationships swift and simple.

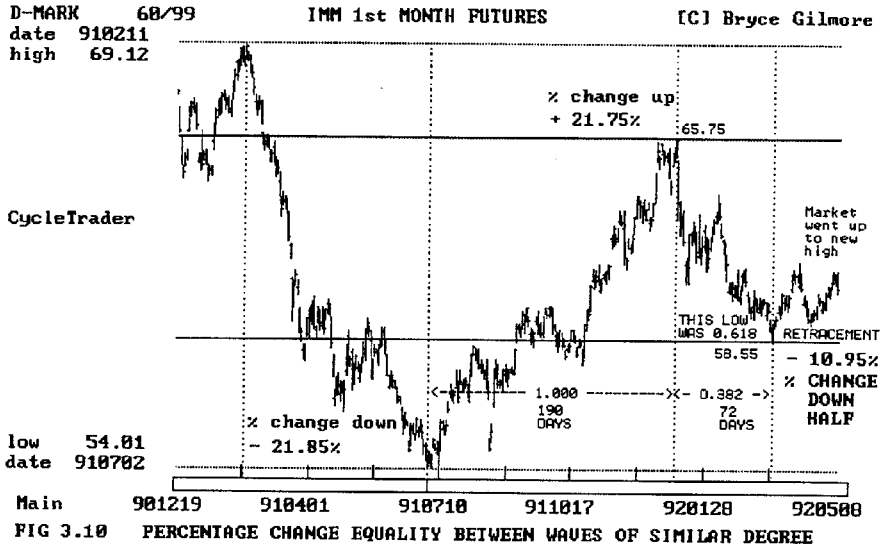



FIG 3.10 PERCENTAGE CHANGE EQUALITY BETWEEN WAVES OF SIMILAR DEGREE

Whichever way the price relationships unfold can be difficult to predict in advance - time cycles will be the deciding factor to confirm their validity.

# 4
# Time Measuring Techniques

Measuring the proportional relationships between market trends (market highs to lows, and/or lows to highs, or lows to lows, or highs to highs) is no different to the approach I use for ratio analysis of price.

Time is a simpler calculation to monitor than price and is the more important tool.

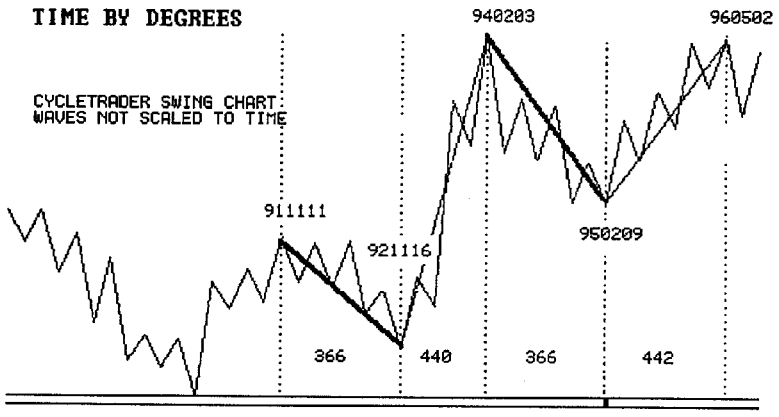
**Relationships of TIME elapsed in trends will form in one of 3 ways:-**

1. **Alternating cycles.**
2. **Direct cycles.**
3. **Internal cycles.**

If you make a study of any free trading market you will be able to identify time proportion between trends of similar degree. I am going to present some examples I have seen over the years to show you how simple they are to identify.

The exact date and price, at each important change in trend, are recorded in the swing file so every calculation relating to time is precise.

**FIG 4.01 ALTERNATING TIME CYCLES**



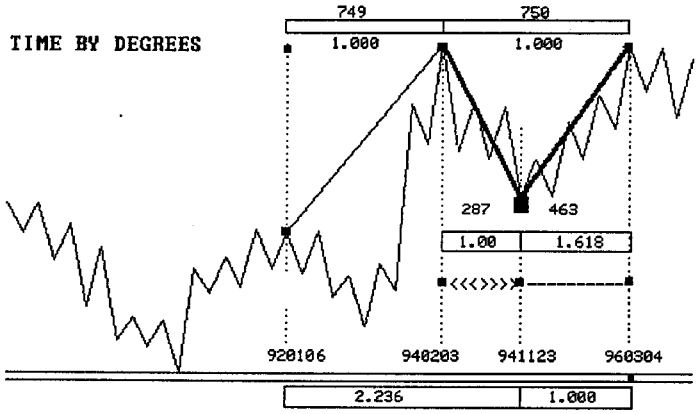

**AUSTRALIAN ALL ORDINARIES INDEX - TIME CYCLES AT WORK**

## Direct Time Cycles

Time cycles can be measured in calendar days or solar degrees. I use both but prefer solar degrees because solar degrees reflect the natural cycles of the universe.

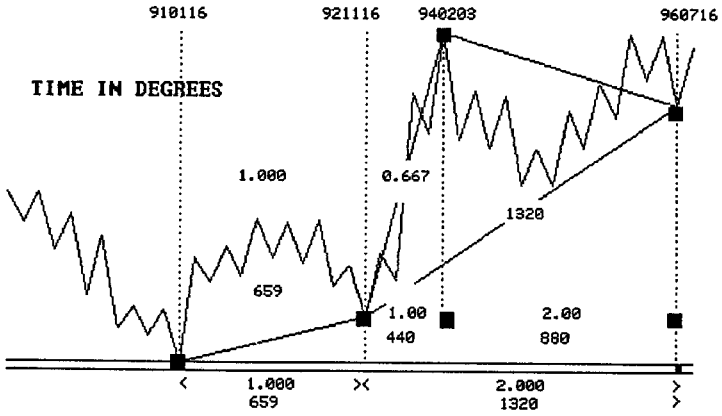
Solar degrees are the divisions of 360 degrees in the circle of 1 year. The elliptical path of the Earth revolving around the Sun causes the relationship between degrees and days to speed up and slow down.

FIG 4.02 DIRECT TIME CYCLES




AUSTRALIAN ALL ORDINARIES INDEX - TIME CYCLES AT WORK

FIG 4.03 DIRECT TIME CYCLES




AUSTRALIAN ALL ORDINARIES INDEX - TIME CYCLES AT WORK

## Internal Time Cycles

The reason many analysts using standard time cycle techniques fail to recognise the simplicity of the geometry of time relationships between market highs and lows is because of a third dimension at work.

To simplify the explanation you have to imagine the market cycles are working along a geometric spiral or a harmonic square. If you study the Cannon of Proportion you will see how each sequence can relate to each other.

If the student takes direct, alternate and internal cycle relationships into account it is possible to predict the next critical point in time where the market trend will reverse trend.

On 3rd February 1994 the Australian Share market made a major change in trend. If you study the next three charts you will see the exactness of the time cycles squaring out.

Also see Fig 2.04, section 2-5, this top is displayed on a weekly bar chart.

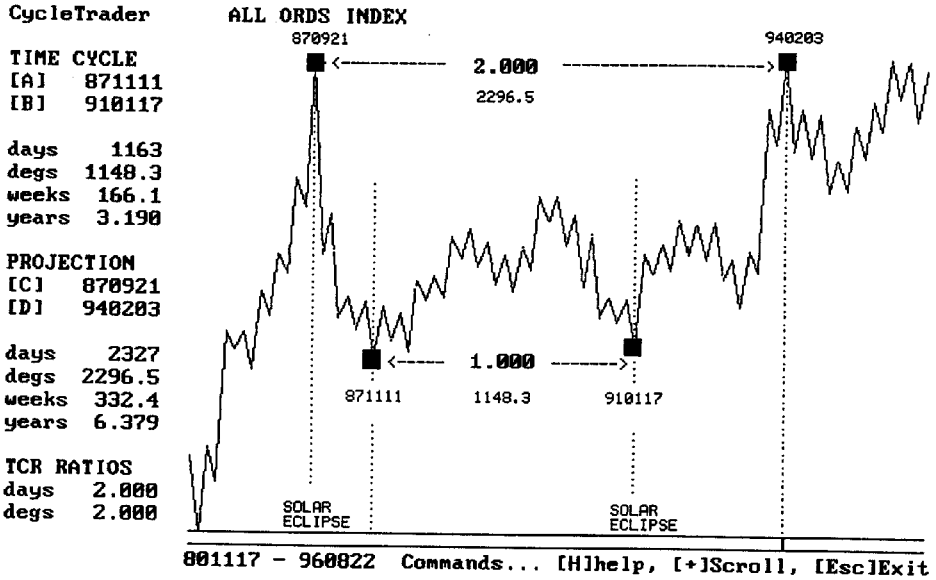



FIG 4.04 INTERNAL TIME CYCLES

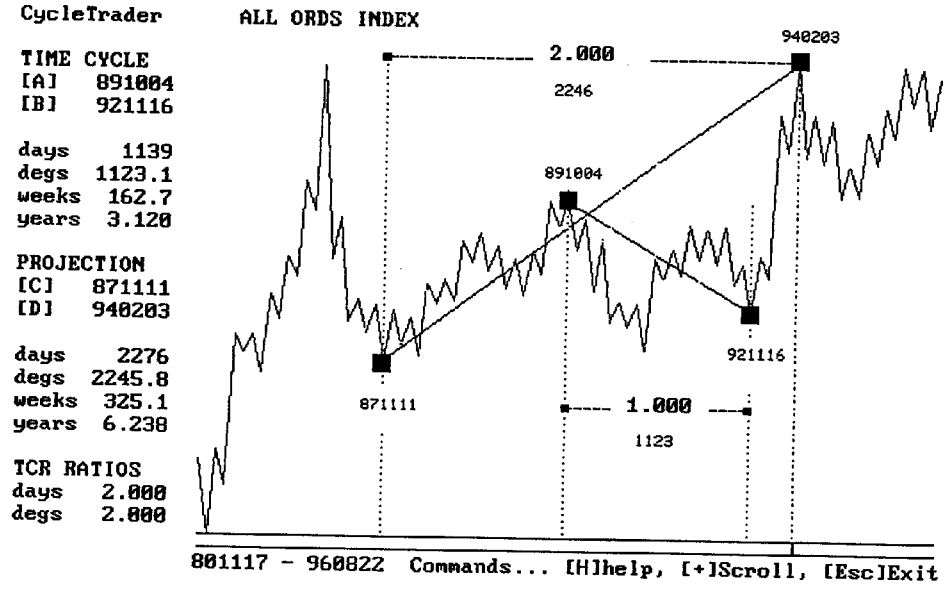



FIG 4.05 INTERNAL TIME CYCLES

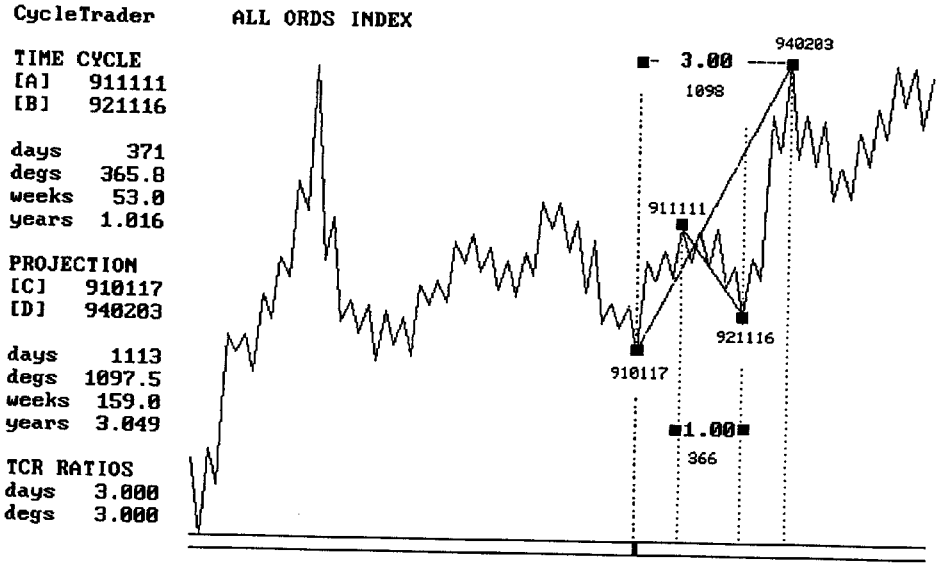



FIG 4.06 INTERNAL TIME CYCLES

## Geometry of Time

I would like to point out something simple every analyst should know about identifying the strength of time cycle squarings; Future critical ratios should have some history of reliability based on past performance.

Every market should leave a footprint for us to work with.

If you look at the internal time cycle relationship (2.00) in Fig 4.04 culminating at the 1994 high, on its own this could have just been a random event. The fact that it wasn't is demonstrated by the ratio relationship with the prior major low, ie., the 1992 low. From the 1987 high to the 1992 low the time cycle relationship with the low/low cycle 1987-1991 was 1.618, see Fig 4.07. Prior to this relationship a couple of other important highs and lows were in geometric proportion.

When you discover a cycle at work you should always take note of the next critical ratio in our sequences of proportion, this will help you prepare possible future change in trend dates. As the dates approach the market will demonstrate by its own activity if the dates are important to us or not.

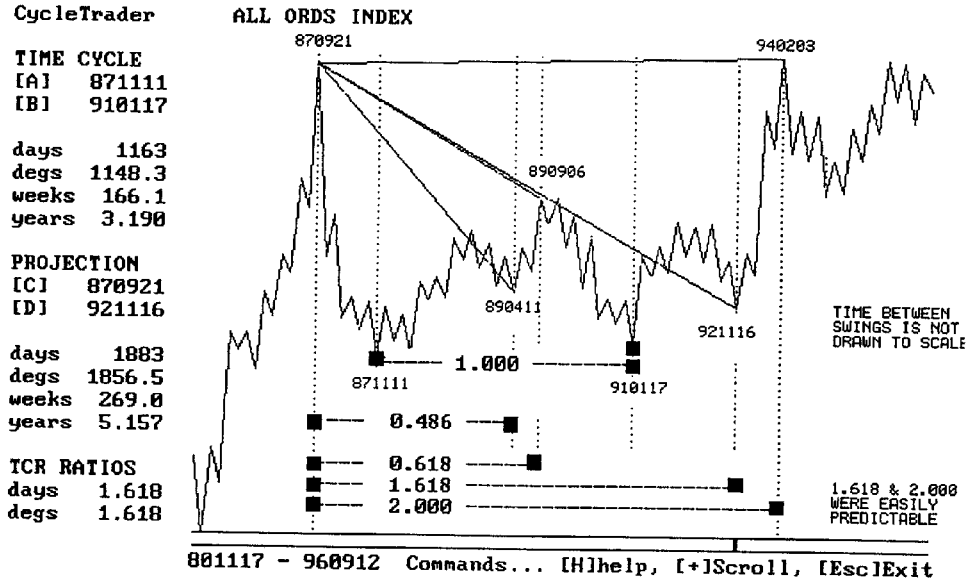



FIG 4.07 IDENTIFYING RATIO SEQUENCES FROM KNOWN CYCLES

For instance the next "RATIO" in this sequence would be 2.618 times the 1987-1991 time range forward from the 1987 high. The date was the 24th January, 1996. Only a minor degree low occurred on this date.

You could actually learn from this scenario of low to low projected forward from the 1987 high and project ratios of:-

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1987 low - 1992 low | 1806 degrees | forward from the 1987 high | |
| 1.618 | 2922 degrees | 2nd November 1995 | Intermediate Low |
| 2.000 | 3612 degrees | 2nd October 1997 | ? |

If you look at Fig 4.06 and project the next "square" of time, 4 times 366, from the 1991 low. The date is 9th February, 1995. The exact date where the market bottomed, see Fig 4.01.
This same "square", 6 times 366, from the 1991 low falls on the 19th February, 1997. This date coincides with 1 times the time from the 1991 low to the 1994 high projected forward.
The "square" of 2 times 366, from the 950209 low also falls into sync.

At this time the market has reversed trend exactly to the day of the 19th February, 1997 in an Intermediate degree.

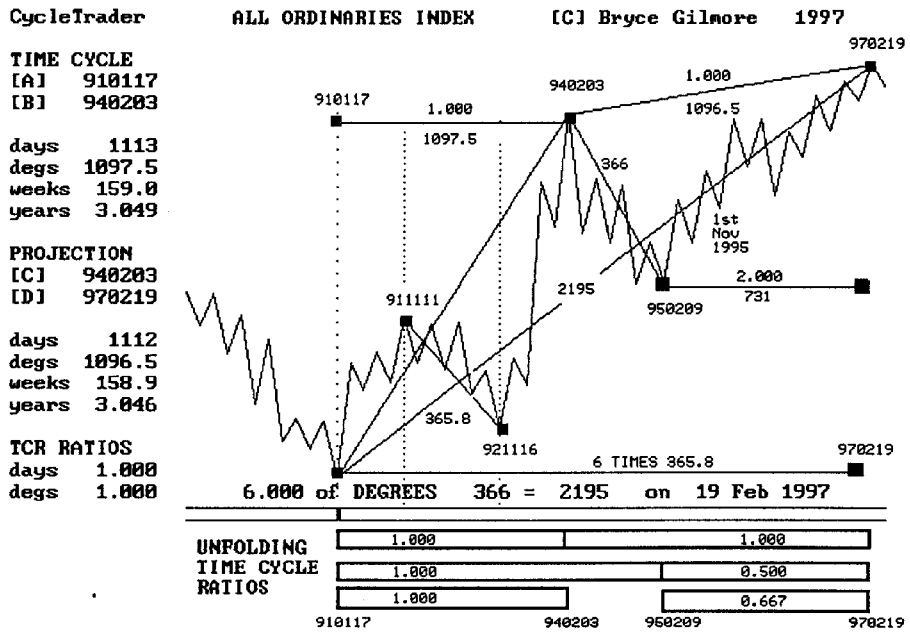



FIG 4.08 PROGRESSION OF TIME SQUARES FROM 1991-1994 SEQUENCE

The time measuring tools I have demonstrated in this chapter, are the most powerful tools I am aware of for detecting change in trend. There are other ancillary tools which I have mentioned in my previous two books.

I am going to digress for a moment as I need to impress on you the importance of the information I have just imparted.

I have spent 15 years and thousands of hours studying, programming and testing a wide variety of markets. I have satisfied myself these tools will work in any free trading market. Over the years I have publicly made many market calls either on the day or the day after an important market high or low. I have been right more times than wrong. My belief system in this methodology is tuned in because I've done the hard work. Yours can be the same if you also do the work.

One of the most outrageous market calls I made in public, was at a meeting of technical analysts on the night of the 1987 low in the Australian Share Market, it was Wednesday the 11th November 1987 and the market had closed on its low for the day. That day the market index had reached a level just over 50% (50.3) off its (then) all time high on the 21st September 1987 and completed a 61.8% (62.2) retracement of all the gains from 1982, a decline of 1163 points in 51 days, from a high of 2312. The fall from grace in this market was swift and devastating and caught 90% of the traders I knew at the time. I had bought some blue chip stock that day and my broker Alan Balding from Prudential Bache was present at the meeting to confirm it. Everyone in the room, about 30 people, were in a state of shock when I said, "The market has bottomed today, if it hasn't you can come around to my place next week and you will find my papers, computers and everything I have worked on in the last 5 years in the street, because I will be changing my occupation!"
I must admit I was totally serious at the time, lucky for me I was right because I have really enjoyed teaching people about these methodologies since.

More recently, in front of 45 ATAA members, on the 18th April 1995 I predicted the top of the Japanese Yen / US$ for the next day. The top was made on the 19th as forecast. Then in Malaysia I was a speaker at the 1st WORLD TECHNICAL ANALYSIS CONFERENCE over the weekend of July 1-2, 1995. At the lunch time panel, in front of 250 people, I warned everyone not to buy the Yen for it was in a major bear market. It never traded higher than the Friday's price and since then has declined over 25% in value.

A month or so prior to the share market crash in 1987 one of the major brokers, McCaughan Dyson in Melbourne, had been negotiating with me to come and work with them as part of a strategic investment research group. I declined to go

after several weeks of negotiating and board room lunches. The problem for me was, I kept telling them we were very close to a severe market downturn.

I recommended they should warn their clients to start hedging, I even put it in writing. When I realized they didn't want to know, I decided I couldn't work with anyone who didn't respect my work, they only wanted me as a figure head.
I got a lot of satisfaction out of telling them "I told you so" when the market took the huge dive.

Another thing of interest I must mention relates to the time leading up to the share market crash in October 1987. A prominent futures broker in Melbourne ran a futures trading contest which began in early September 1987.
The contest was for real time trading on your own account and obviously designed to increase their brokerage commission and client base. It cost $1000 to enter and all entry fees were to be distributed as prizes.

Everyone with a local reputation in the industry was solicited to enter. In fact they even did a special deal with me so I would play the game. They agreed to, and did, refund to me a percentage of my brokerage fees after the event, because I wouldn't pay the competition rate, except for the purposes of the competition.

To my best estimate there were about 55 private and corporate entries.
The results were based on percentage gains to the starting value of your account equity. Leaders results were published each Friday in the Financial Review, our daily financial newspaper.

At no time were there anymore than 5 traders names with positive % gains on the list published each Friday.
I asked the broker why they were only publishing positive results, and he said, "We don't want to embarrass anyone".
You can imagine why, it would have been bad for business!

After the share market crash the competition was cut short, the end result was 4 or 5 people in profit. I was number 4 or 5 with a 50% gain in equity on my account over 8-9 weeks trading. It computed to an annualized return in excess of 400%.

I used time and price analysis to select all my trades throughout the competition, my tools stood the test and didn't let me down.

The reason I mention these things is because it reminds me to stay doing what I know is right. I know I can rely on my tools to forecast or trade without hope or fear, everything I do is based on probability and knowledge.

More recently I have refined my tools to only the ones I am showing you in this manual. If all you do in the future is follow the market and keep a track of the unfolding patterns and cycles you will always be prepared for possible change in trend.

The technical analysis world has attracted a lot of charlatans to its ranks. Many claim to have the "Holy Grail" to sell you. I can tell you from experience, there is no "Holy Grail" but if there was, the techniques I am teaching you would be the closest you could get to it.

TIME CYCLES form in every market, the cycles are peculiar to that market or market complex, they are not some standard time value such as 13 weeks, 26 weeks, 38 weeks or 52 weeks. They are dynamic and will continue to repeat themselves time and time again.

Carefully study each market complex you are going to trade and see if you can uncover the predominate cycles of time that are carefully camouflaged within.

Once you find the key the future will seem so easy you won't believe it.

# 5

# Dynamic Vibration Analysis

**[C] 1986 Bryce Gilmore**

Dynamic Vibration or Space Analysis if you prefer is a derivative of both TIME & PRICE.

**The dynamic vibration of a range is calculated thus:**

Number of price units from low - high / by number of days or degrees

For instance if a trend began at a level of 2086 and terminated at a level of 2520 it would have advanced 434 units of price.
If the time from the low to the high took 217 days then we could calculate the Vibration as:

**Price = 434** **Time = 217**

**Dynamic Vibration = 434 divided by 217 = 2 units per day**

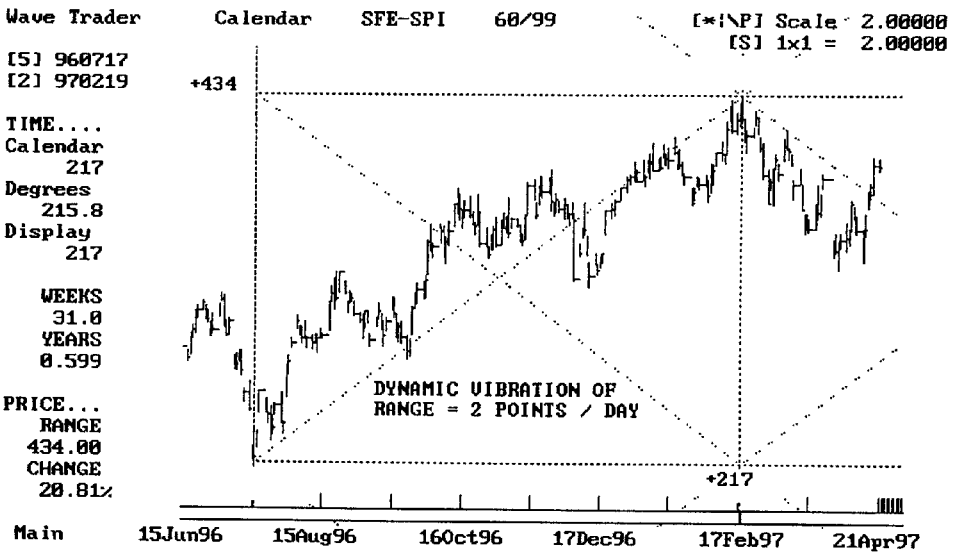



FIG 5.01 CALCULATING THE DYNAMIC VIBRATION OF A RANGE, UNITS / TIME

## Dynamic Vibration Analysis

**INVOLVES COMPARING INDIVIDUAL MARKET CHANGE IN TREND LEVELS FOR GEOMETRIC RELATIONSHIPS IN SPACE.**

**IF ONE CANNOT IDENTIFY A GEOMETRIC RELATIONSHIP DIRECTLY BETWEEN PRICE UNITS OR TIME UNITS THEN A COMBINATION OF BOTH SHOULD BE EVIDENT.**

Relationships can form in similar ways to the way we would compare Price or Time relationships.

## Market corrections

Sometimes in a market correction the price level where a reversal and resumption to the prior trend begins does not fall on a retracement ratio of the sacred canon.

This example will explain the concept of Dynamic Vibration in a market correction.

The ASX All Ordinaries low of April 3, 1997 broke just below the 0.382 price retracement level of the prior bull market of similar degree. Yet, price support fell exactly on the 0.500 dynamic vibration angle of the previous range vibration, indicating a geometric relationship between time and price.

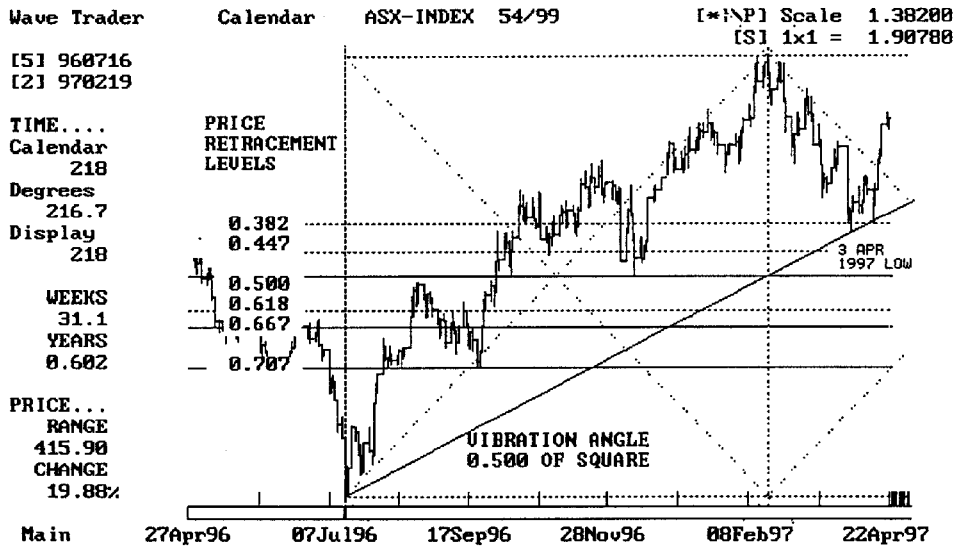



FIG 5.02 DYNAMIC VIBRATION ANALYSIS RELATING LOW-HIGH-LOW GEOMETRY

## Dynamic Vibration Ratios between Alternate Trends of Similar Degree

This methodology is similar in technique to comparing either Time or Price.

A geometry of Time and Price between waves of similar degree can often be confirmed in this way. This technique is extremely useful when you have some doubt as to the level of degree of trend change to expect.

Once again I will remind you, "The Elliott Wave Theory states, 'All waves of similar degree will relate in both time and price amplitude.' R.N. Elliott."

In this example of the July 3, 1997 high in the Sydney Share Price Index, the expansion rate of the 1994-1996 range is multiplied by 1.618. The 1.618 vibration angle intersects the July 3 high when drawn off the July 17, 1996 low. Also the 0.707 vibration angle intersects the April 3, 1997 correction low.

It is because of this knowledge I named my previous two books GEOMETRY OF MARKETS.

When it comes to identifying market tops and bottoms VIBRATION clears up the picture if the Time and Price signals seem a little vague.

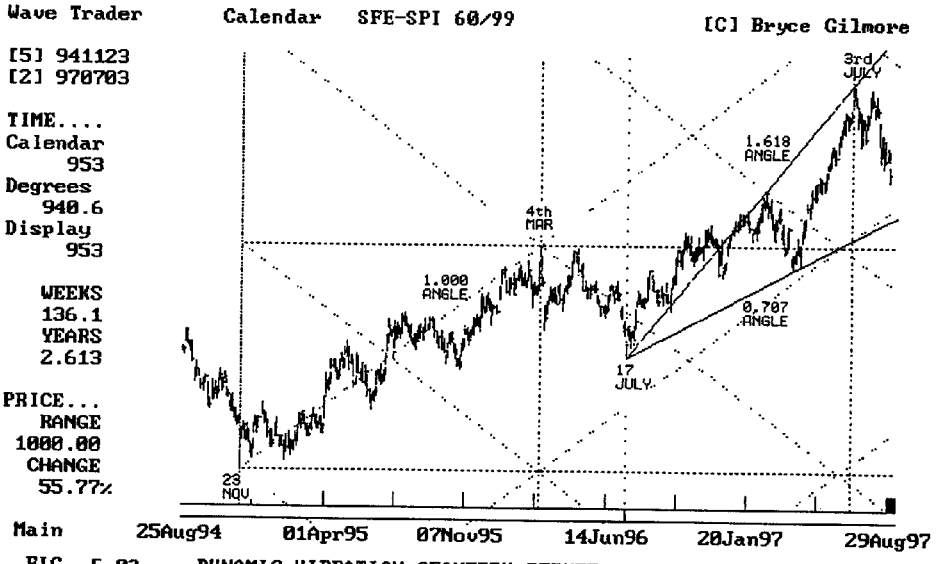



FIG 5.03 DYNAMIC VIBRATION GEOMETRY BETWEEN WAVES OF SIMILAR DEGREE

## Dynamic Vibration Projection Patterns

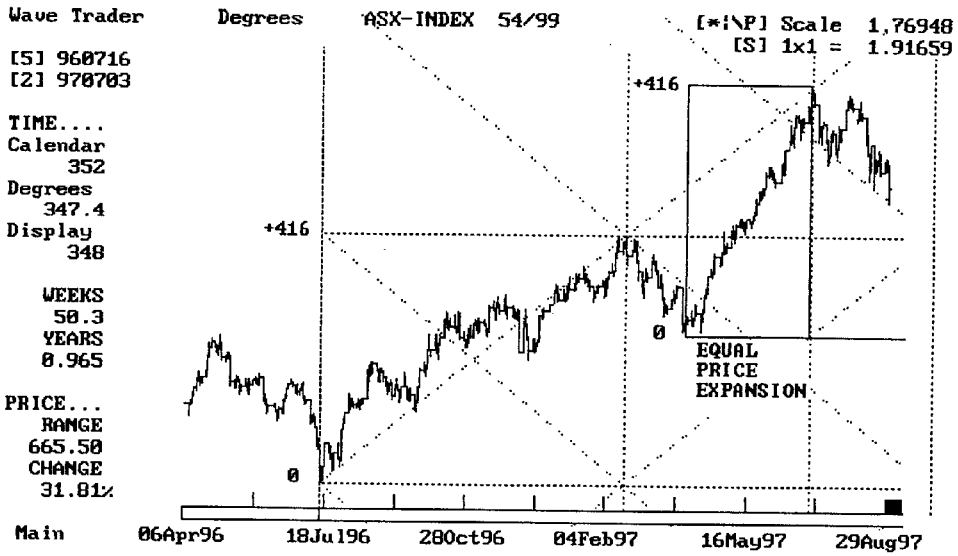



FIG 5.04 DYNAMIC VIBRATION PROJECTION OF A PRIOR RANGE GEOMETRY

Notice how the 1x1 range angle intersects the July 3, high at the equal range level projected from the April 3, low. This is geometric time and price squaring.

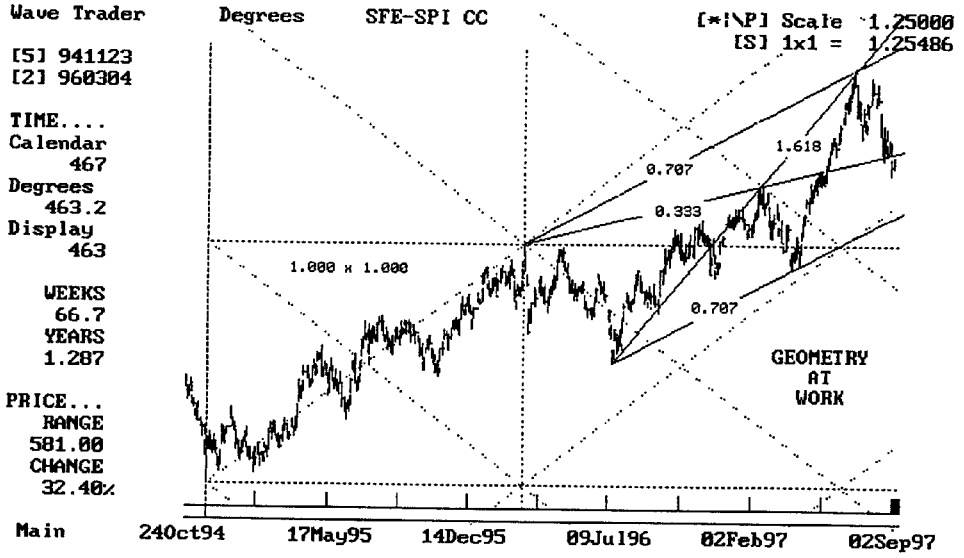



FIG 5.05 DYNAMIC VIBRATION ANGLES TAKE ON A COMPLETELY NEW MEANING

## Dynamic Vibration Sequences In Corrections

During the unfolding bull market from 1994 to 1996 I observed the following ratio sequence between the advances and the corrections. The 1st correction terminated on the 0.382 angle of the advance, the 2nd on the 0.486 angle of the advance and the 3rd on the 0.618 angle of the advance.

Corrections will often terminate on angles drawn at strict geometric ratios of the prior advance. When time is up (on a pressure zone) always review the dynamic vibration relationships for a confirmation of time and price squaring.

Corrections will often terminate on price retracement levels as well as direct vibration angles 50% of the time. Other times they will oscillate between price and vibration.

Use all your tools all of the time and you will be rewarded. When in doubt follow the trend!

Always remember, the truth is in the experience! The geometric relationships of time and price between unfolding waves in any market have stood the test of time, and will continue to do so in the future. Be a believer and profit from this knowledge.

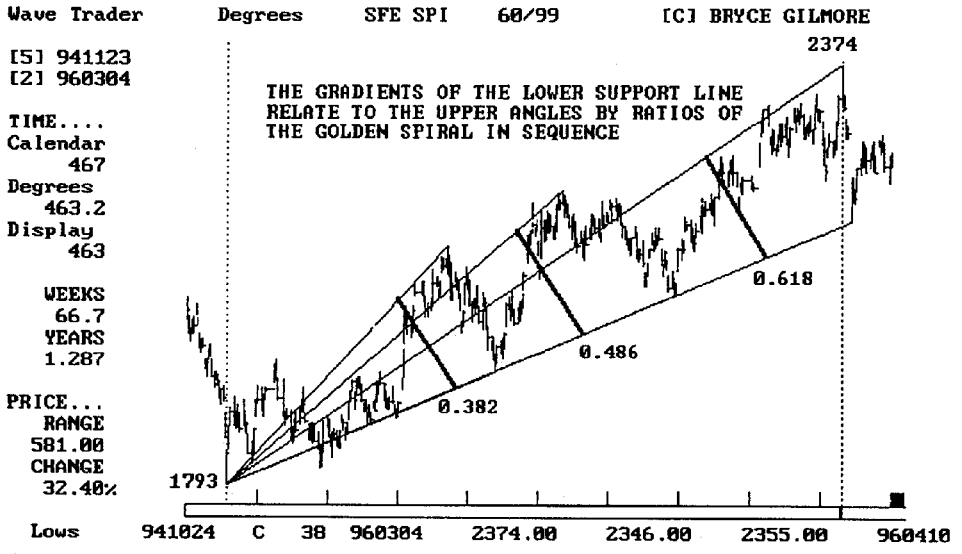



FIG 5.07 DYNAMIC VIBRATION SEQUENCES IN CORRECTIONS 0.382, 0.486 & 0.618

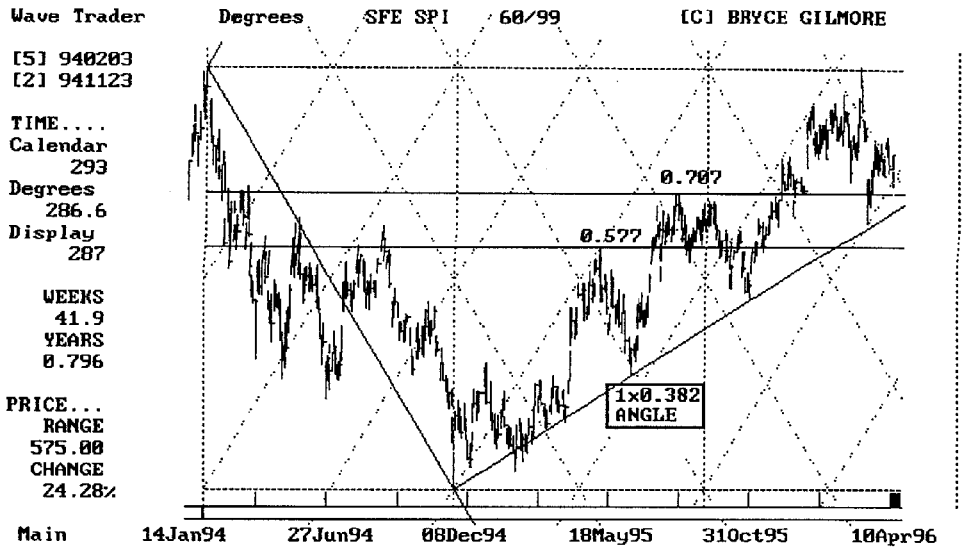



FIG 5.08 DYNAMIC VIBRATION OF A PRIOR RANGE - 0.382 ANGLE ACTING AS SUPPORT

If you review Fig 5.07 the 3 correction lows were also related dynamically to the prior major range (1994 bear market) vibration angle of 1x 0.382.

In Gann terms the bear market from 940203 high 2368 to the 941123 low 1793 squared price in time, 575 points in 287 degrees, 2 points per degree. Vibration rates as accurate as this occur from time to time, ie., 1 to 1, 2 to 1, 3 to 1, et cetera, but I wouldn't count on it happening to often, I only accept it when everything else lines up.

## Chart Scaling is important for a visual perspective

To measure and calculate **DYNAMIC VIBRATION requires** the component of **TIME** to be scaled in either **CALENDAR DAYS or SOLAR DEGREES.**

Trading day calculations have no validity in time calculations as a chart of trading days alone is corrupted due to weekends and holidays.

**When it comes to time - time is time - time does not have any gaps - time is important whether the market is open or not. Price will adjust for time when the market is open.**

# 6
# Chart Patterns I Monitor

My first serious introduction to charts was through my broker back in early 1981. I began by subscribing to a weekly chart service. In the beginning my technical expertise was limited to drawing trend lines on my charts to locate support and resistance levels. As time went by I was introduced to the idea of regular chart patterns forming in the many markets I was trading. It didn't take me long to realise the predictive value of PATTERNS formed on my charts.

**Understanding the implications of chart patterns will always reward the technical trader. It gives you an edge when you need to make a decision based on time and price analysis.**

**PATTERN ANALYSIS** is so important for determining the strength of any market trend.

**I monitor CASH MARKET prices against the FUTURES CONTRACT.**

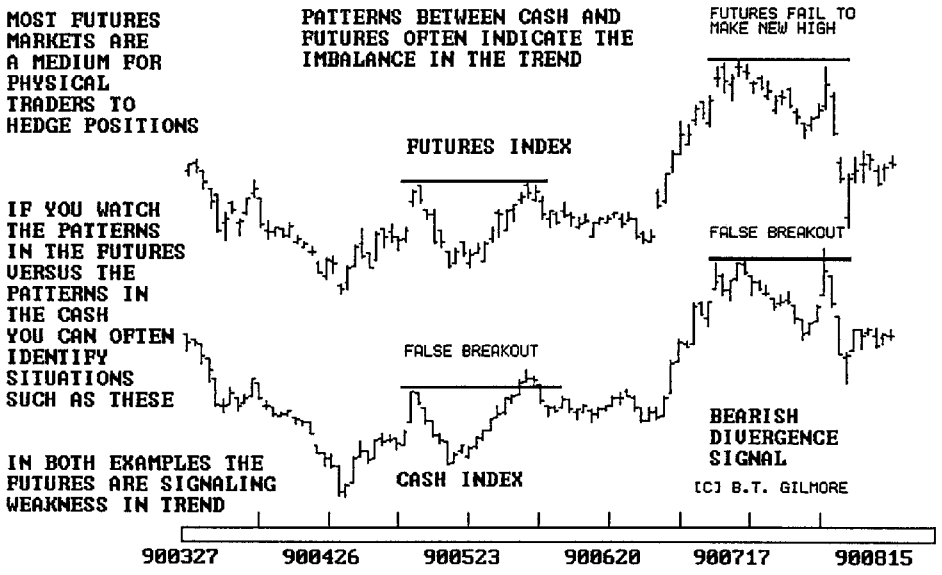



FIG 6.01 MONITOR CASH & FUTURES FOR BULLISH OR BEARISH DIVERGENCE

**One of the best confirmations of strength of trend, at a top or bottom in the market, is to compare the CASH market price action against the FUTURES for DIVERGENCE in price.**

I am often surprised when I meet seasoned analysts and they are not doing this. Fig 6.01 is a comparison between the ASX - All Ordinaries and the Sydney Share Price Index during a major correction in 1990 within a continuing bear campaign. The reverse situation is more likely in a bull campaign, ie., in a bull campaign the Futures would make a new high and the Cash would fail to confirm. You will have noticed throughout the prior sections I have many double tops and bottoms on my swing charts. All of these evidenced a divergence between the Futures and the Cash markets.

## Market Strength

Another practice one can use to monitor the underlying strength of a market, is to compare the top stocks against the broad market.
For instance the Dow Jones Industrials Index and the Dow Jones Transport Index were used by Charles H. Dow to formulate his Dow Theory.
If both were making new highs the overall market was bullish, if one was failing to make new highs when the other was he considered it a non-confirmation of trend.
Recently the DJIA and the S&P500 signalled a bearish divergence prior to the mini melt down in October 1997 as Fig 6.02 shows.

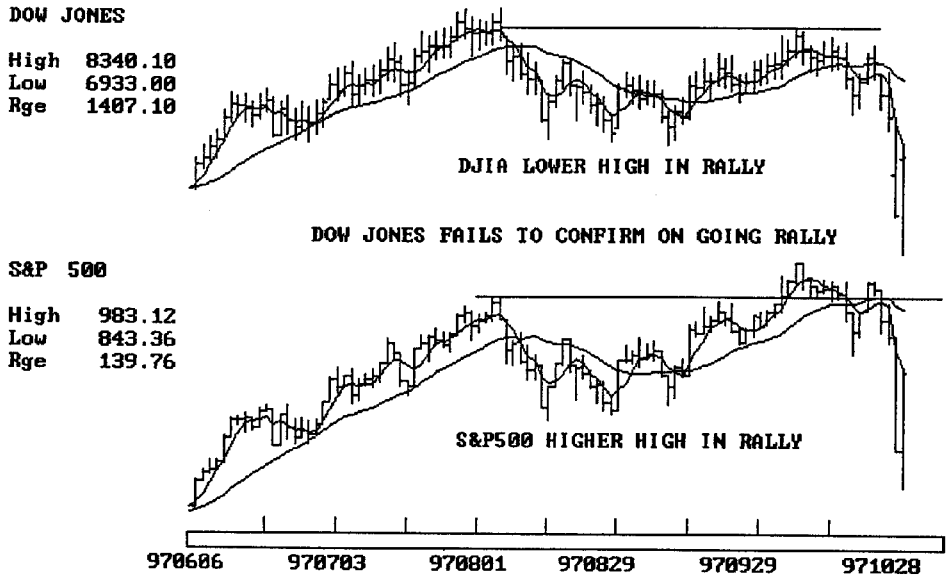



FIG 6.02 DIVERGENCE BETWEEN TOP 30 STOCKS AND THE BROAD MARKET

The first sign of trouble was when the moving averages and the Directional Movement Index signalled a SELL 7 days prior to the melt down. The pattern was an added extra for the astute analyst, including me.

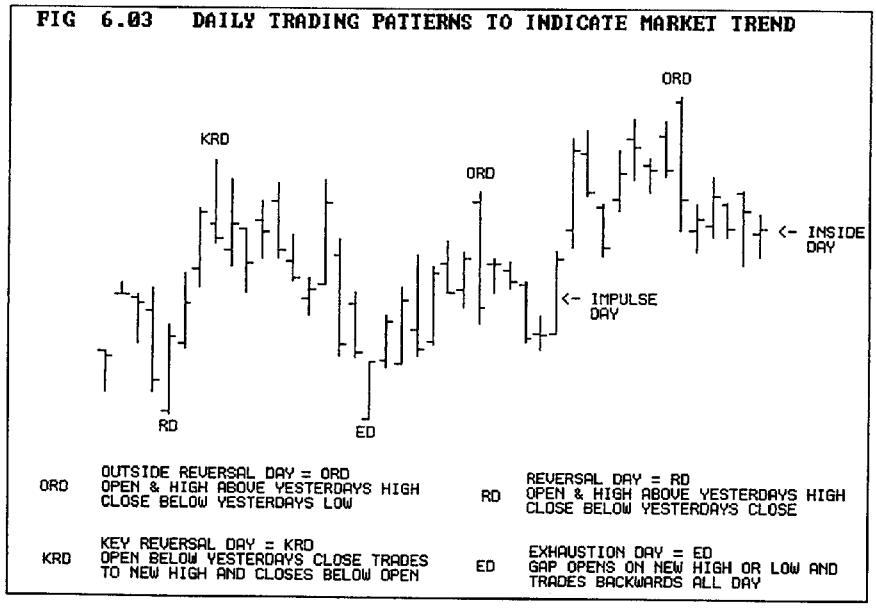
## Daily Price Activity (Range)

Daily trading activity, ie., how the actual current trading day related to the prior day or several days is a very important indicator of the market strength.

The **OPENING PRICE** is very important in relationship to the **CLOSING PRICE** each day, especially when the market trades in a wide range.

Technical analysts have special names for **daily range patterns**, the primary ones are:-

**Reversal day**
**Key reversal day**
**Outside reversal day**
**Island reversal days**
**Inside day**
**Exhaustion day**
**Impulse day**



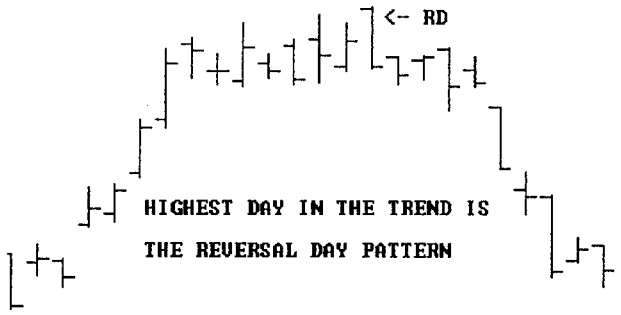
**The relationship of todays closing price to yesterdays closing price, today's opening, high and low price can often alert traders to a shift in demand by buyers and sellers.**

REVERSAL DAY PATTERNS are an important indicator when they occur on a price and time zone at extremes of a medium term trend. They are also important for the identification of the expiration of a corrective move.

The identification of a REVERSAL DAY can alert you early when there is a change in the MINOR trend.

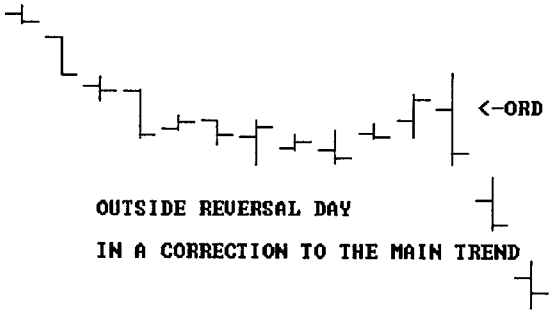
## Reversal Days

Reversal days are any day where the market makes a new high or low in the primary trend and then closes with a negative advance to the prior days close. The larger the daily trading range the more important.




## Outside Reversal Days

Of all reversal day patterns the outside reversal day is the most important in a corrective move. The wider the range on the day the more important the signal. If the high or low of the day coincides with an exact price retracement level then the reversal of trend should continue.

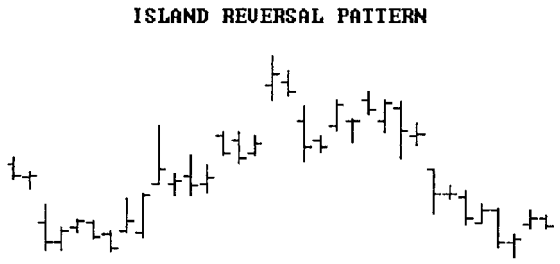


## Key Reversal Day

A key reversal day indicates a change of trend if a price target is achieved at the high or low for the day.

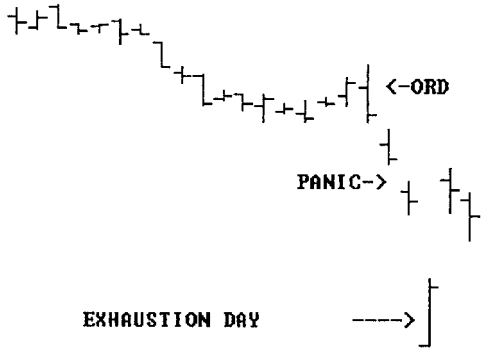
## Island Reversal

Not seen very often but can occur in a blow off stage of a bull or bear market. The "island" is a price range of 1 to 3 days which gaps above or below the prior days range then gaps back into that range reversing the trend.




## Exhaustion Days

The exhaustion day pattern is more often than not seen in a market shake out. Prices generally decline beyond a fair value because of panic. The opening price will gap down severely from the prior days close, it will be the low for the day and the market will rally strongly.




If you understand the components which make up **DAILY PRICE PATTERNS** you can look at a chart and read between the lines, especially when a strong time and price intersection falls on the high or low for the day.

## Japanese Candlesticks

Japanese candlestick charts can be helpful when looking at patterns. The **DOJI** means "A sudden danger". A doji is formed when the opening and closing price are the same. According to Steve Nison the doji are valued for their ability to call market tops.
The reason for the negative implications is because the doji represents indecision among the buyers. It takes the conviction of buyers to sustain a rally. A doji after a sustained uptrend represents a vacillation by buyers.

The **gravestone doji** is a particularly important daily pattern for a reversal in an uptrend.

The **three black crows** is a good confirmation that the bears are taking control over the buyers. A black crow is formed when the market closes lower than the opening price. Three consecutive down days with closes lower than the opening price indicate a break down in trend.

I like the way Japanese candlesticks make the pattern more visible. **BLACK** days are **DOWN** days, **WHITE** days are **UP** days.

There are more than 50 Japanese candlestick patterns explained in Steve Nison's book Japanese Candlestick Charting Techniques, the explanations are clear and concise, I recommend it.

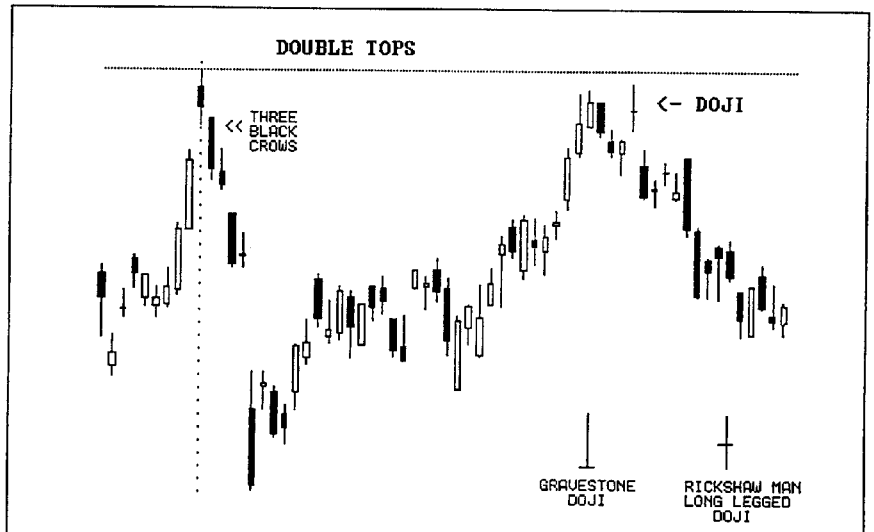



FIG 6.04 DOJI - A sudden danger - CLOSES ON OPENING PRICE

## Trend Lines - Old Highs and Lows

Predominantly I watch the position of the market relative to TREND LINES, Old Highs and Lows, I watch to make sure a bullish trend is continually making higher lows or a bear market is making lower highs. Once the first violation occurs I am on alert for a change in degree of trend.

It has often been said, **"Old support = new resistance, Old resistance = new support".** With this in mind, each time the price activity crosses below an old low or above an old high there is power in the current move.

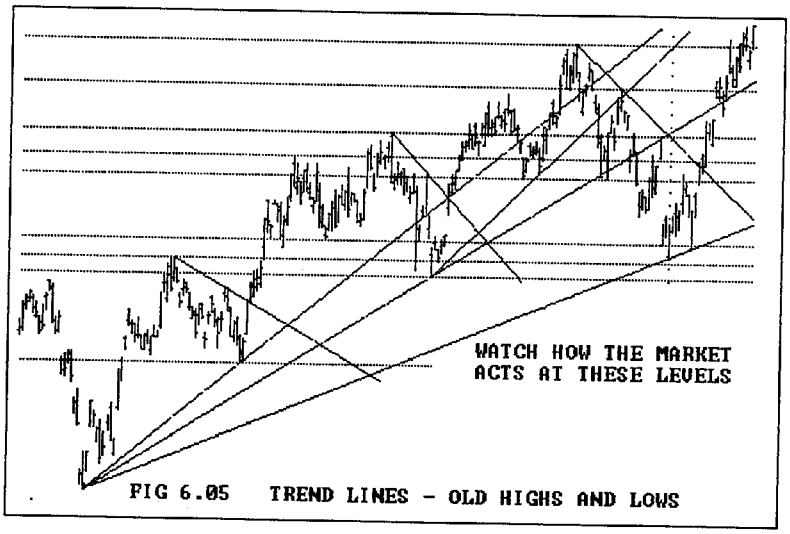



FIG 6.05 TREND LINES - OLD HIGHS AND LOWS

## Accumulation and Distribution Patterns

Prior to any strong move up or down, more often than not, markets will trade within a range for periods of 2 to 6 weeks, sometimes longer.

The patterns formed in an accumulation or distribution phase have names such as:-

**Triangles**
**Flags**
**Pennants**
**Rectangles**

I would recommend the book "Technical Analysis of Stock Trends", by Robert D. Edwards and John Magee for an expanded explanation of patterns and their implications. Every trader should own a copy of this book.

## Why is Pattern Analysis so Important?

The future will always be a repetition of the past in some form or another.

Pattern analysis is the basic reason why technical analysts keep charts. If one wishes to become a master of technical analysis it is important to know the implications contained within the unfolding patterns.

If you wish to exploit trading opportunities with a 65% plus chance of success, then you should study chart patterns which reliably offer trading opportunity.

The patterns I refer to are patterns which identify conditions where a predominant trend will resume. In every market move there will be a minimum of three sections, ie., The first move indicates the new trend. When the trend is indicated there will be a correction before the next section begins.

If you find reliable ways to identify a resumption to the main trend you will be taking trades which have the best likelihood for success. I don't think it is unreasonable to try and pick the extreme high or low of any trend when I have TIME & PRICE, nevertheless once a trend is identified you have to learn how to milk it for all it's worth.

I think the only way for every trader to take advantage of any market, is to study past price patterns and find the ones that suit his/her trading personality. When the new market patterns fall into your required parameters check for time, price and trend indications for signals which confirm this view. If everything agrees, take the trade. If your research, trading plan and money management is valid you will make a success of trading.

If on the other hand you forget about pattern and trend and rely purely on TIME & PRICE you will be taking unwarranted chances.

**Please remember the four things that are important to any trade selection.**

**TIME - PRICE - PATTERN - TREND**

# 7

# Trend Confirmation

Today there are many sophisticated indicators available to the technical analyst for the confirmation of trend strength or weakness.

The old saying, "The trend is your friend." is the best advice I can give anyone who wants to make an occupation trading futures markets.

Most markets are only moving in a consistent trend about 30% of the time, when they are they offer exceptional opportunity for trading profits. At times when you are getting clear cut indications of a strong trend in progress extra positions can be taken.

Markets move through phases going from stable to overbought or oversold and back again. There are so many system traders in the market using trend indicators and other methods to initiate trades, once all the indicators fall into place you can reliably expect a surge in that direction. Trend indicators are useless in a correction except to warn you of a possible change.

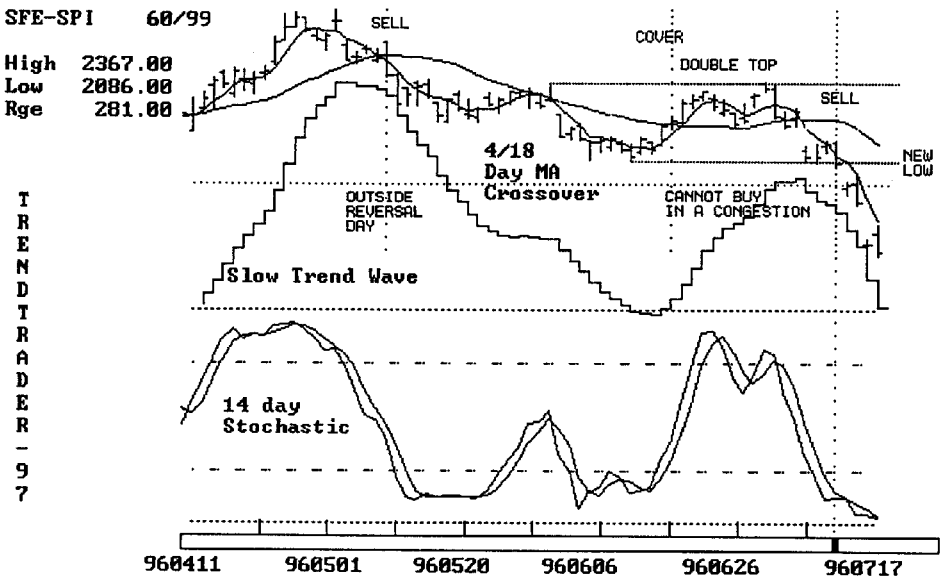



FIG 7.01 USING TREND INDICATORS TO CONFIRM TREND DIRECTION

Fig 7.01 gives an example of how you can combine trend indicators and pattern recognition to initiate trades.

Starting from the top of May 2, 1996 which squared time in major proportion and made a double top with March 4, 1996 (see Fig 4.01 and Fig 6.04) a confirmation of trend was signaled with the OUTSIDE REVERSAL DAY on May 9 and a crossover of the 4/18 day moving averages. A sell on the OPEN the next day with a tight stop-loss was indicated. The market opened at 2292 made a high for the day at 2294 and closed on its low at 2259. In a little over two months the market had declined to a low of 2086 to meet strong time cycles and price support (see Figs 3.05, 3.06, 3.07, 4.03) without breaching the entry price.

The rally into late June made a double top with the prior correction high (May 31) and a resumption to the downtrend was signaled when price broke below the June 13 prior low on July 11 and closed lower on the day.

The strength of the resistance of the May 31 rally high was evident by the price retracement level of the high and the Gravestone doji pattern. Indicators were still short and sell signal was indicated for the next open.

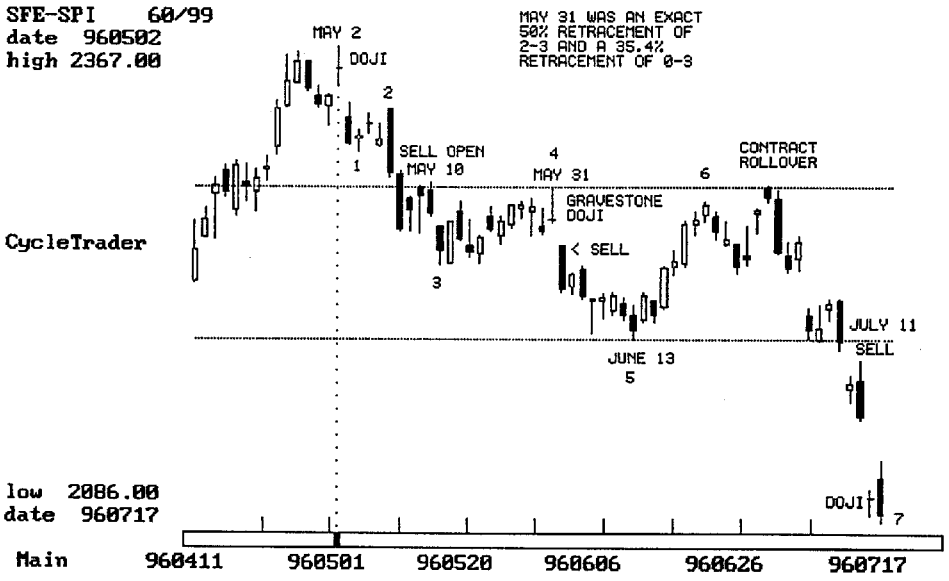



FIG 7.02 SUPPORT AND RESISTANCE THROUGHOUT THE DECLINE MAY-JULY 1996

There were several places a short term trader would be forced to cover to protect profits. But if you used a few simple rules and only traded with the trend you should be able to take profits.

One important observation I made during this bear market was the high of July 2 was not confirmed by the CASH market. The futures contract had just rolled over and came on with a premium to the prior month.

By the way daily patterns in the Cash are useless due to the opening price nearly always being the prior days closing price.

Whenever you get a rollover in the futures contract new opportunity is created. This is because a major drop in open interest takes place, due to the expiry of positions held by professional hedging. Within a day or so new hedging by the professionals begins, this often leads to the establishment of a new trend.

Changes in open interest in any futures market can act as a guide to the position of the professionals. Never forget to track the open interest activity. Open interest can only rise when there are new sellers entering the market.

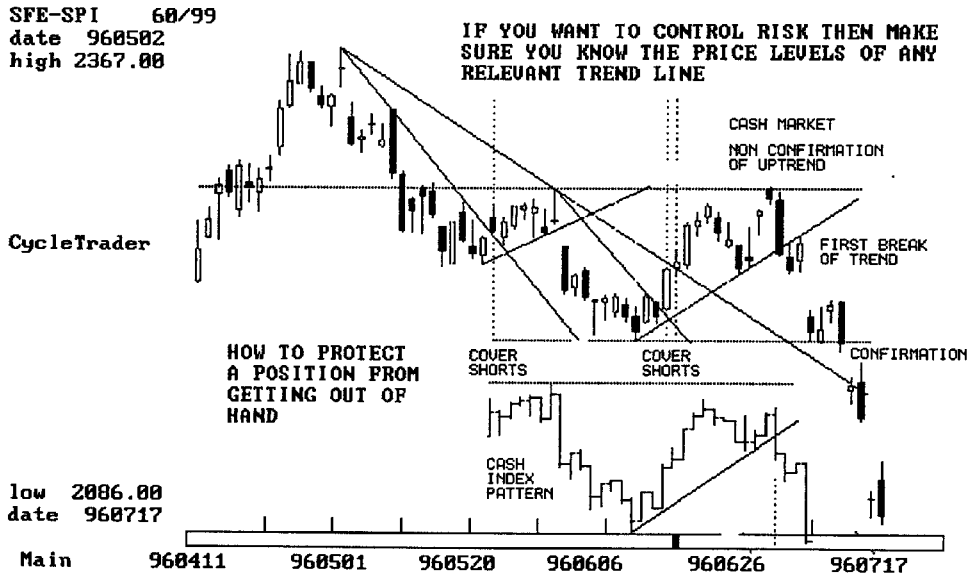



FIG 7.03 USING TREND LINES AS A TREND INDICATOR AND A STOP-LOSS TRIGGER

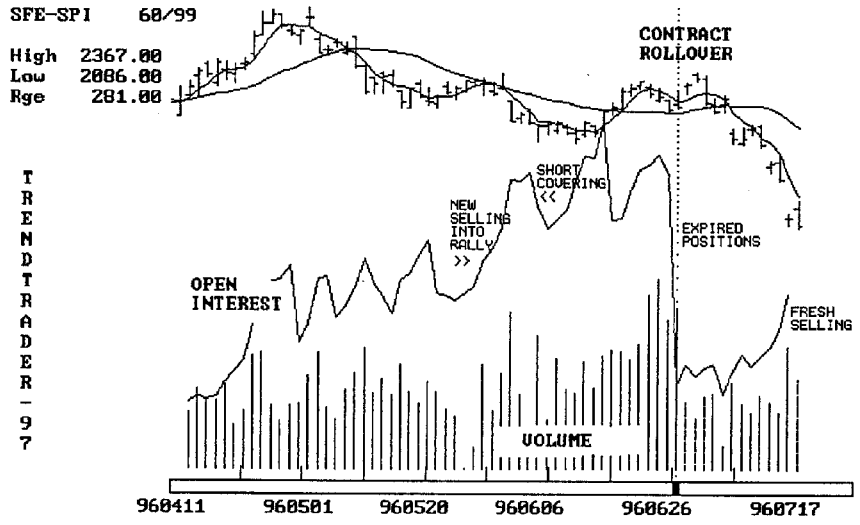



FIG 7.04 OPEN INTEREST & VOLUME - RISE IN OI = NEW SELLERS

When in doubt the only place to turn is with the standard trend indicators. Trend indicators are normally a confirmation of what is really happening mid-term.
If you have an idea that is not being confirmed by the trend indicators, then it is time to give it up. Don't expect the market to save you, you must save yourself.

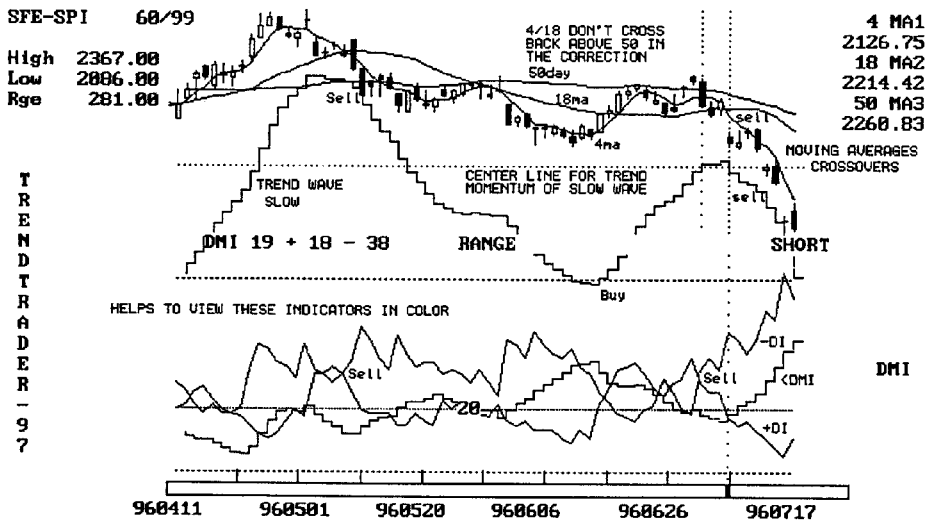



FIG 7.05 COMBINATION OF TREND FOLLOWING INDICATORS = WAY TO GO

Unfortunately trend indicators have only a limited value when the market reaches extremely overbought or oversold levels.

We do know that a reversal of trend will occur, the only way possible to know when, is by measuring the TIME & PRICE relationships that form in the unfolding patterns.

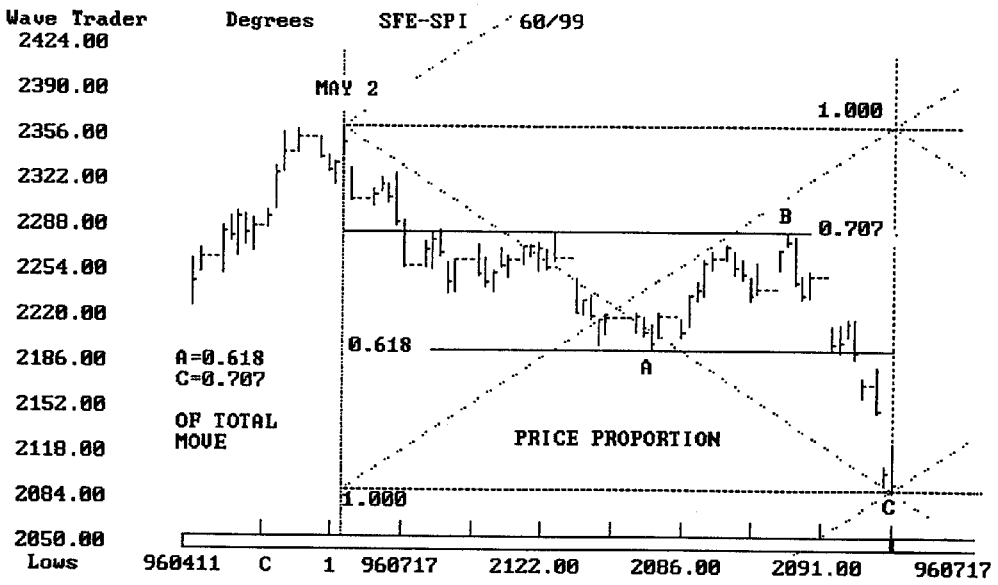



FIG 7.06 WHEN INDICATORS BECOME OVERBOUGHT OR OVERSOLD PRICE & TIME IS THE ONLY WAY TO IDENTIFY THE END OF A TREND.

For further examples of the price and time relationships evidenced at this low see Figs 3.05, 3.06, 3.07, 4.03.

The important tools to continually monitor in relationship to trend, other than momentum indicators are:-

1. Open Interest.
2. Trend line support and resistance levels.
3. Old price highs and lows.
4. Daily price patterns.

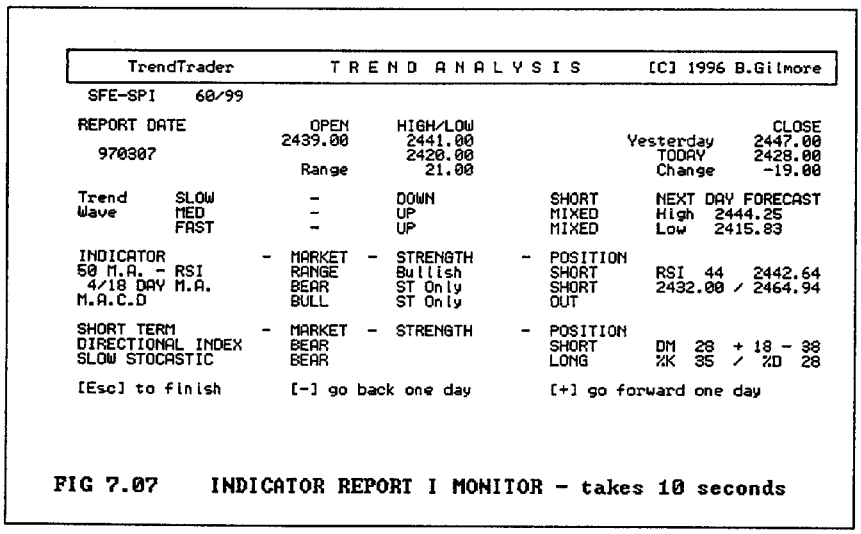
For indications of trend I follow several simple indicators.

These are:-
Directional Movement Index - DMI
Relative Strength Index - RSI
Moving Average Convergence Divergence - MACD
Slow Stochastic - %K %D
Moving Average on Close - 4/18 crossovers and 5/34 crossovers.
50 day Moving Average
CycleTrader Trend Waves - Fast, Medium & Slow.

To my mind most of the indicators I have studied do similar things, some faster than others, therefore why over complicate the issue. They will read overbought or oversold at 3rd waves highs and lows, they will diverge with price at 5th wave tops and bottoms.

One thing I know from experience is that the best profits are gained by trading with the trend. If you want to be a counter trend trader you must have a short term trading perspective.

Much of the time when I identify time and price signals I will not place a trade until I've got a confirmation from pattern and trend.



```
TrendTrader          T R E N D  A N A L Y S I S          [C] 1996 B.Gilmore
SFE-SPI    60/99

REPORT DATE              OPEN      HIGH/LOW                      CLOSE
  970307               2439.00      2441.00    Yesterday      2447.00
                                    2420.00    TODAY          2428.00
                         Range        21.00    Change           -19.00

Trend      SLOW          -          DOWN       SHORT      NEXT DAY FORECAST
Wave       MED           -          UP         MIXED      High  2444.25
           FAST          -          UP         MIXED      Low   2415.83

INDICATOR          -  MARKET  -  STRENGTH   -  POSITION
50 M.A. - RSI         RANGE      Bullish       SHORT      RSI  44   2442.64
 4/18 DAY M.A.        BEAR       ST Only       SHORT      2432.00 / 2464.94
M.A.C.D               BULL       ST Only       OUT

SHORT TERM         -  MARKET  -  STRENGTH   -  POSITION
DIRECTIONAL INDEX     BEAR                     SHORT      DM  28  + 18 - 38
SLOW STOCASTIC        BEAR                     LONG       %K  35  /  %D  28

[Esc] to finish       [-] go back one day      [+] go forward one day
```

**FIG 7.07 INDICATOR REPORT I MONITOR - takes 10 seconds**

# 8

# Trade Entry Techniques

The first requirement of a trader is to find an entry point where risk can be controlled.

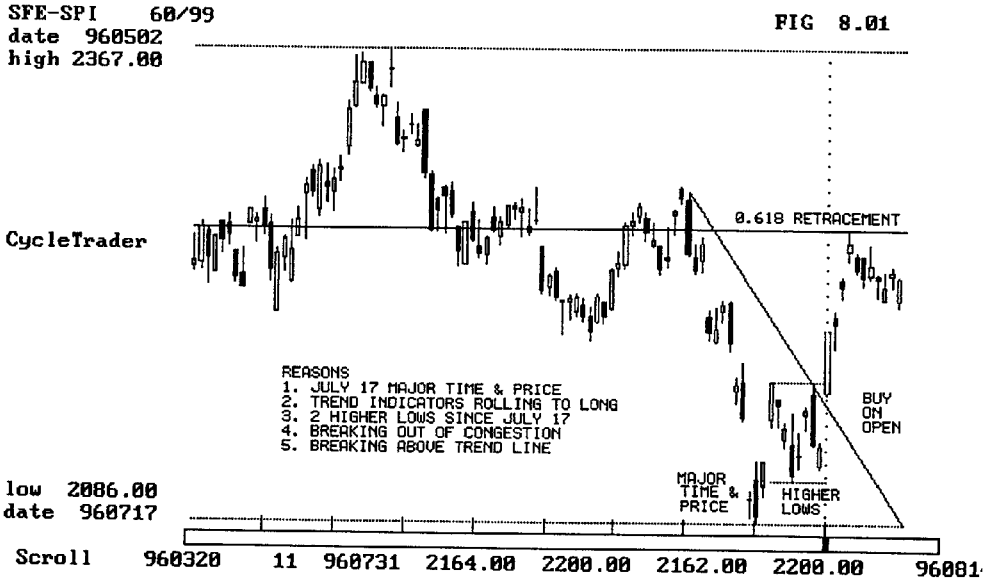
I am going to demonstrate two important methods of entering a trade:-

1. **Buy or sell at the opening price.**
2. **Buy or sell at the closing price.**

Chart patterns demand you to consider each of these techniques, if you wish to control risk.

Under certain conditions it pays to be aggressive and take a small risk, in others it is better to take a conservative approach even though the risk is going to be extended.

In nearly all cases it is important to trade only with the indicated trend.



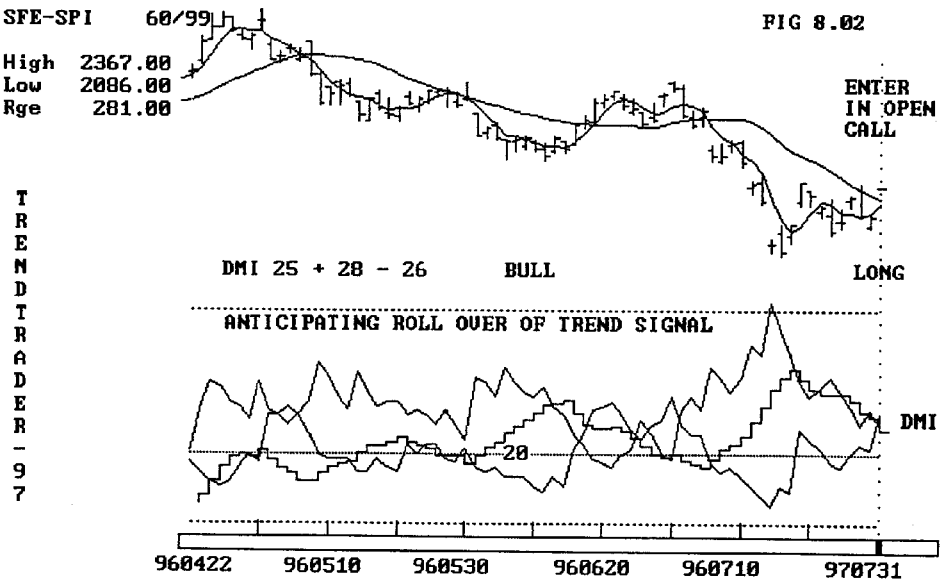
## Buy Or Sell At The Opening Price

At the beginning of a bull move, especially after a strong move down, trend indicators will take some time to turn long. You will observe them turning from short to long, and can anticipate from the moving average crossovers and the DMI, if the market were to make a new high price they will signal a buy.
I know from experience that the moment trend indicators roll-over a flood of orders will hit the market. Usually the market will surge out of its current trading range as sellers cover and new buying takes place.

Tell-tale signs are one or two higher lows after the major low in an accumulation pattern.
The day of the breakout the market will usually OPEN on its LOW for the day and CLOSE on its HIGH.

**Days like this reduce risk to a minimum, for you can enter on the open and place a 5 point stop-loss on your position. If the market does not go your way it is not as strong as you think; you're sidelined quickly with a minimum of cost!**

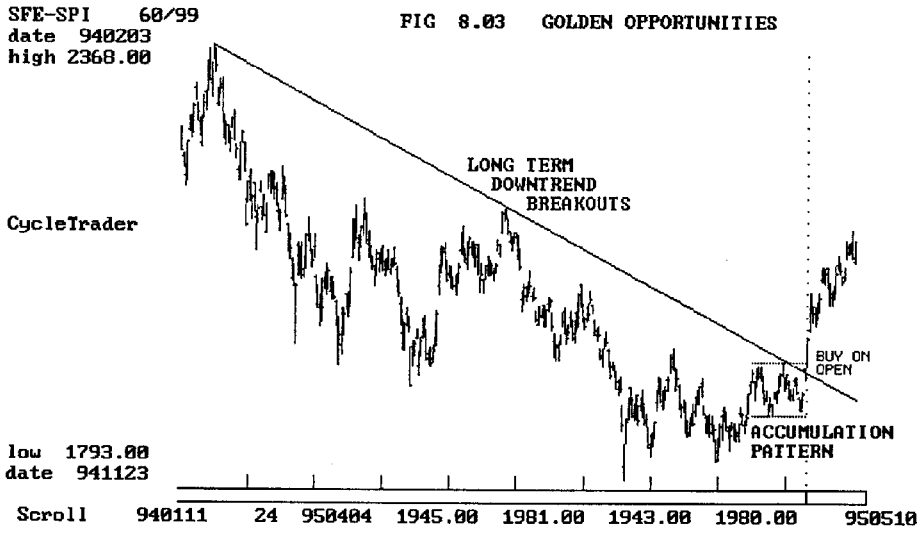
Just prior to the market opening you can get the opening call and assess if your suspicions of a breakout are going to be confirmed. I normally edit in the theoretical opening call and see how it will effect my trend indicators.



This is probably the safest entry technique a technical trader can employ.

If you get stopped out of your position and the market still breaks out - don't worry and chase it. Wait for the next day and buy on the open with a tight stop-loss. The reason is clear, if a new trend is strong the market will surge, if it's not the chances are it's a false breakout.

Sometimes you may miss a move if the market is not strong but it's better than holding a position with an unmanageable equity loss.

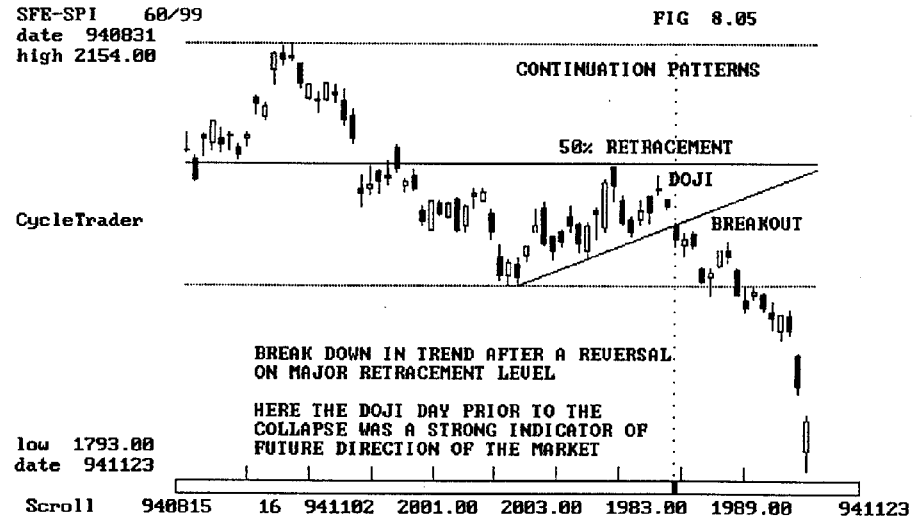



## Long Term Trend Line Breakouts

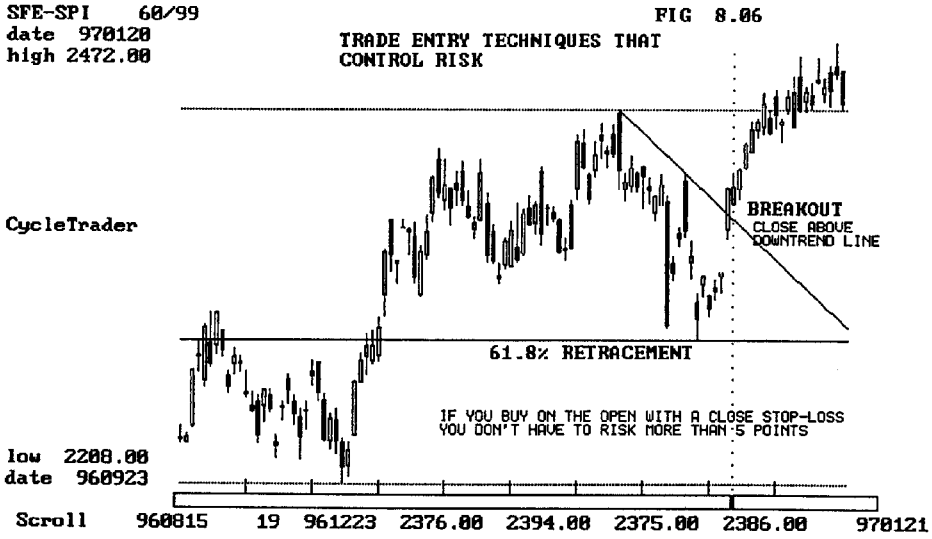
These opportunities are rare so be on the lookout for them, you need to be able to plot at least 2 years of daily price bars.

This breakout occurred the day after a contract roll-over as the professionals started to build up new positions to replace the ones that had just expired.

The breakout day was confirmed by trend indicators signaling a change in trend to long.




Whenever a correction ends with a major ratio retracement and then resumes trend you can sell the opening price if it is on or below the short term trend support line. In a bull market the reverse is applicable.



## Selling Double Tops & Buying Double Bottoms

These are not especially common, but if you find a situation where the market is about to make a high or low in close proximity to an old top or bottom and your time signals are all synchronized.

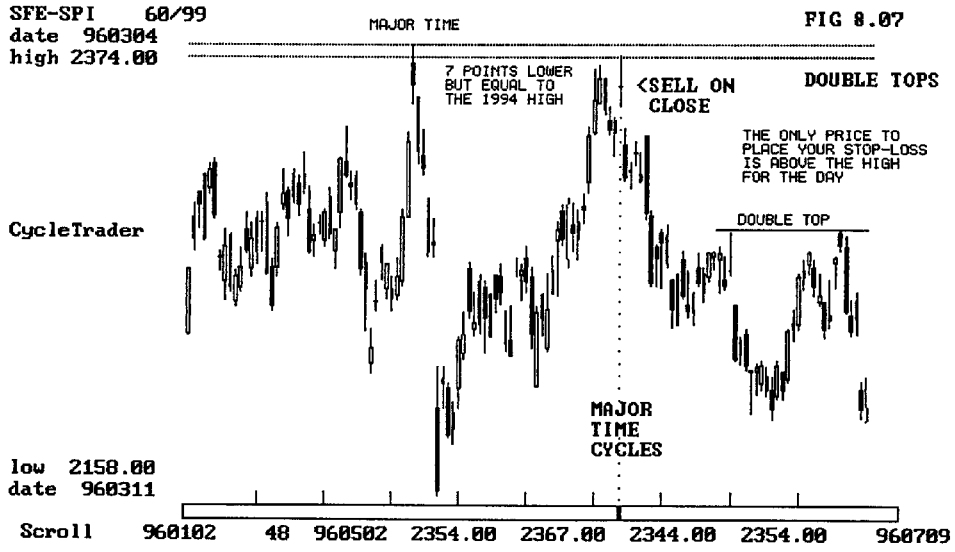
**NOT RECOMMENDED UNLESS MAJOR TIME CYCLES PRESENT.**
You will have all day to decide!

You can take a chance at picking the high or low day in the market IF YOU ARE PREPARED TO TAKE ON MORE RISK. The problem is there can be a variance in the price (either under or over) the old top or bottom.

The best way to handle days like this is to watch the market activity throughout the day, if the price range displays weakness on the day, ie., closes weak in relationship to the extreme point of the day. **BUY or SELL at the close.**

If the market breaks your way next day you are set, if not you are out quickly with an unknown loss.

If time is right you should end up with a good trade! The more intermediate degree distance between the double tops or bottoms the better.



## Buying Or Selling Range Breakouts

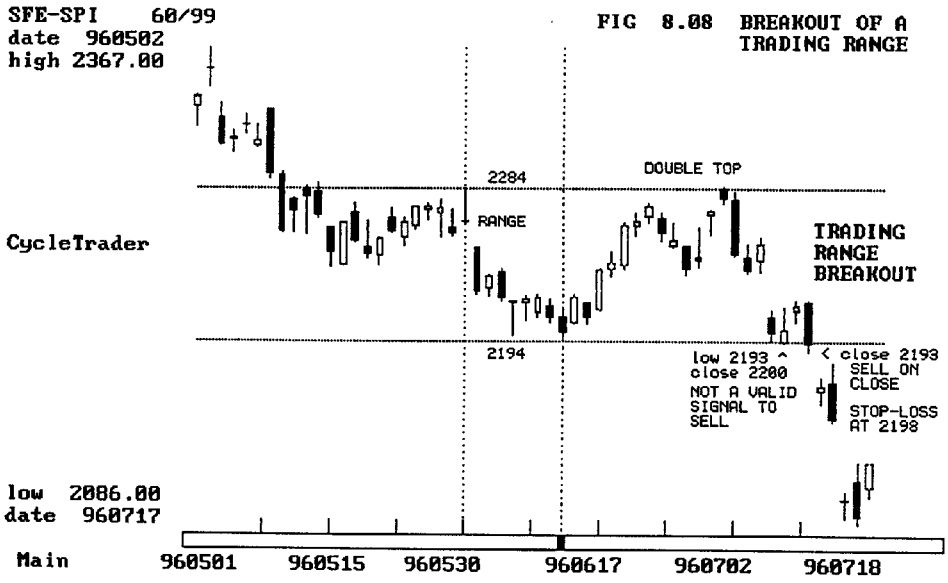
This was one of the first trade entry techniques I started with. I found after several years of trading (successfully) this method contained many limitations.

Under certain conditions this entry method has to be employed, otherwise you stand the possibility of missing a good trading opportunity. Especially in a fast running market.

A range is any type of congestion pattern where a market contains itself within a price retracement level and a prior high or low depending on the trend. Some times a range can be defined over a week or so other times the range may extend to a month or more.

**As the price trades to the top or bottom of the range you have the possibility of a double top or double bottom, intra-day breakouts with a close back inside the range are not a confirmation of a breakout; the close must be outside the range.**

The only effective way I have found is to buy or sell on the close, only if the closing price is outside the range. You place a stop-loss for the next few days just inside the breakout price level.



## Buying Breakouts From An Intermediate Degree Triangle

Triangles can form during an accumulation pattern after a severe decline in market prices.

The implication of power in the triangle is implied by the higher lows giving it an ascending appearance.

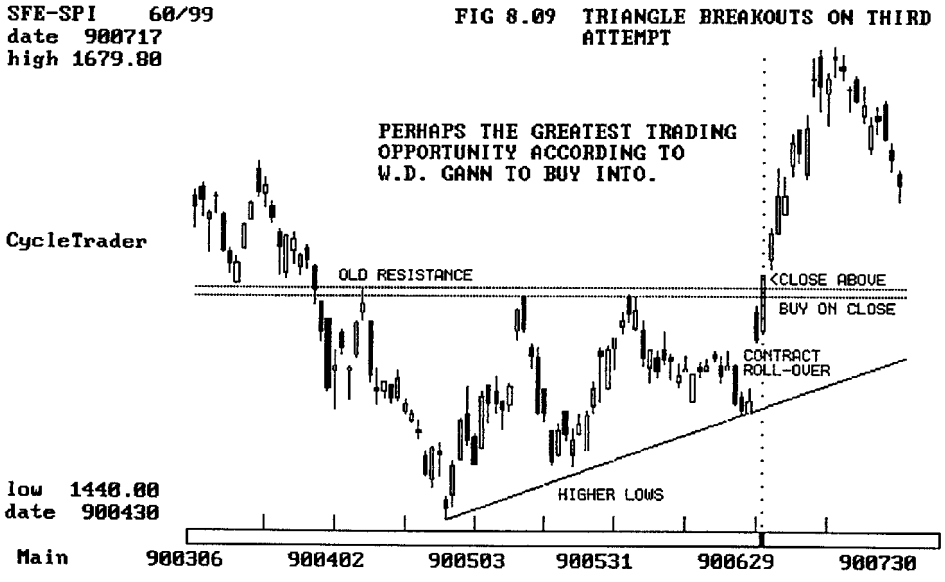
Once the breakout has closed above the RESISTANCE levels of the highs in the triangle, an excellent buying opportunity is signaled.

To take advantage of the next days trading session it pays to buy on the close.

Once everyone has realized the chart pattern the market should be called much higher on the next days opening.

W.D. Gann talked about support & resistance levels being broken on the 3rd or 4th attempt. If a market couldn't break through on the 4th attempt it was fatal.

If one of these opportunities comes your way trade it!



## Head & Shoulders Tops

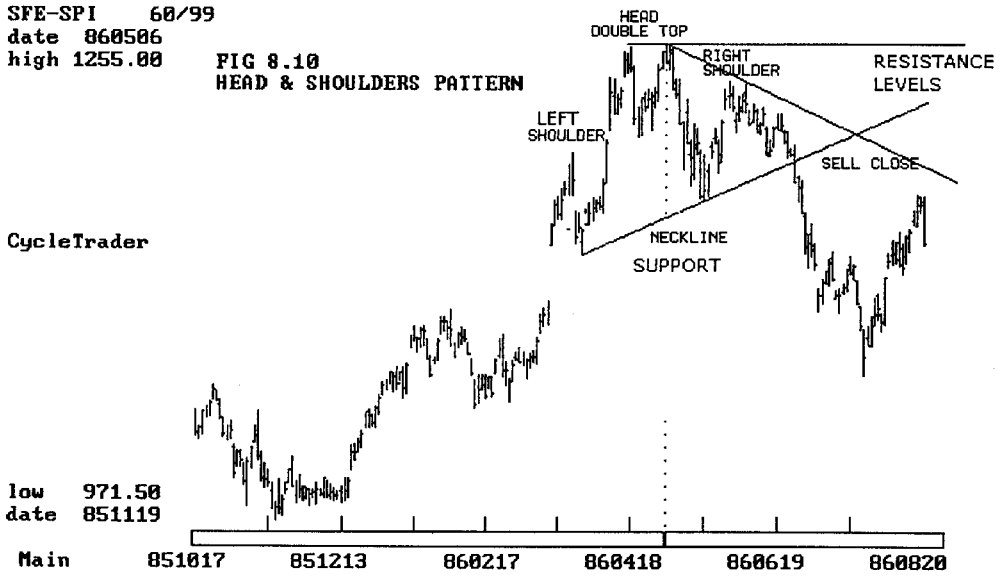
Sometimes a topping pattern called a Head and Shoulders will form at a major reversal in trend.

The day of the HEAD will witness super strong TIME CYCLE relationships with the past.

The right shoulder will be confirmed by a break of the neckline. Sell on the first close below the neckline.

This example back in 1986 was especially eventful due to the double top at the head. Always be on the alert for a head and shoulders confirmation of a major high. One word of warning, head and shoulders patterns can form in intermediate degree. After the market has corrected sufficiently the prior bull market trend can continue. A break, first above the downtrend line taken from the head and the right shoulder and second a break above the head will confirm a continuation.

After this decline the market rose vertically to the 1987 high. A prominent Melbourne Elliott Wave Analyst CEO publically held short positions against the prevailing trend and bankrupted the company.



## Bull Market Continuation Patterns

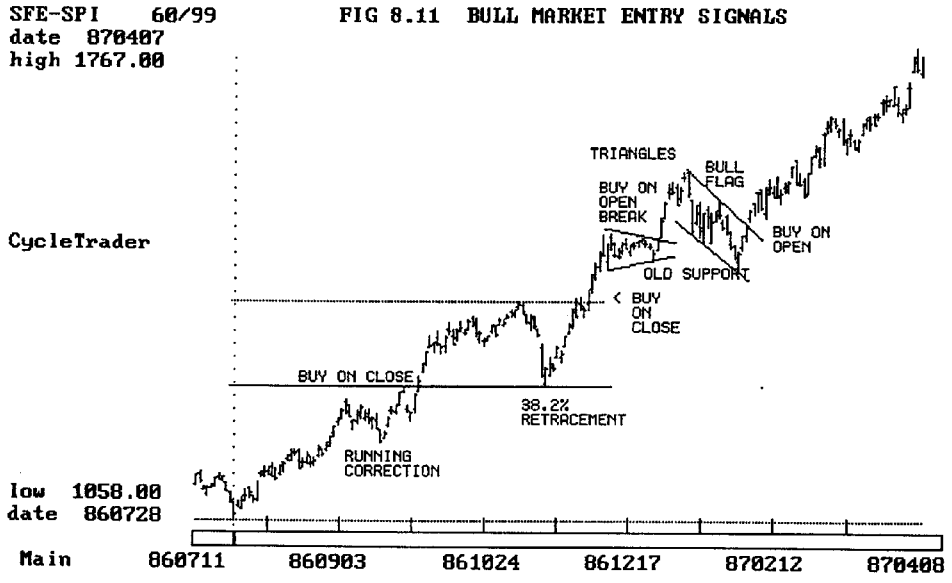
Once a bull market gains strength it will re-confirm trend by the patterns in the corrections.

**Running corrections**
**38.2% retracements**
**Triangles**
**Bull flags**
**Corrections back to levels of prior support**

These are the patterns you must watch for!

Below are some examples in the Share Price Index which occurred throughout 1986/7 following the prior pattern in Fig 8.10. This market broke the downtrend on a running correction.

One Elliott Wave analyst was so convinced the head and shoulders was the end of the 1982-86 bull market that he failed to follow the trend. This move was the one that sent Ian Sykes broke. His company held its short positions against the trend, after the market broke above the head, until it went bankrupt.



## Advanced Price Analysis Signals

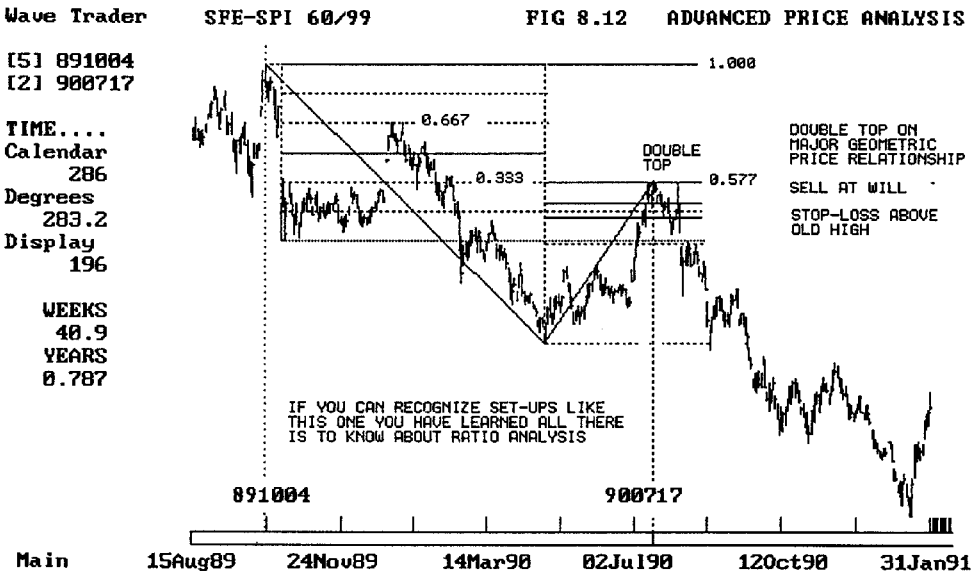
I wouldn't expect a novice to appreciate the beauty of price ratios falling together the way they do. It takes experience and study before you can recognize situations like the one below.

I saw this one back in 1990 and took advantage of my knowledge. I have seen many similar situations over the years that would be hard to explain here.

It is up to the student to study the past for knowledge. To explain every possible way a market can "square" time and price would be wrong of me. If you have a CycleTrader it will be easy for you to do what I do.

If you follow any market on a day to day basis you will see what I see, ie., if you follow the procedures I use. If you expect easy trading profits without doing the work, then, give it away now. You have no chance!

Start with the simple set-ups and as you learn more add the more sophisticated trading signals to your trading plan.



## Classic Time & Price Signals

These usually occur in retracements of prior ranges. They repeat over and over in MINUTE, MINOR and INTERMEDIATE degree waves. More often than not when they are going to work the market pattern will provide the information you need to jump in with a close stop loss.

A **Classic Minute or Minor degree signal** is the trend indicators about to, or just rolling long or short 1 or 2 days prior to the TIME & PRICE conjunction. Some of the best SHORT TERM reversals of trend occur at the borderline of trend confirmation if you are using a mechanical system!

| **Retracement** | **Time Factors** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **50%** | 38.2% | **50%** | **61.8%** |
| 57.7% | 50% | 57.7% | 70.7% |
| **61.8%** | **38.2%** | **50%** | **61.8%** |
| 70.7% | 50% | 57.7% | 61.8% |
| 78.6% | 100% | | |
| **100%** | **50%** | **61.8%** | **100%** |

These are just some retracement combinations I have noted that regularly occur in the many markets I follow. It will pay to research your favorite markets and discover for yourself their own character - once you do, you are then in a position to capitalize on it.

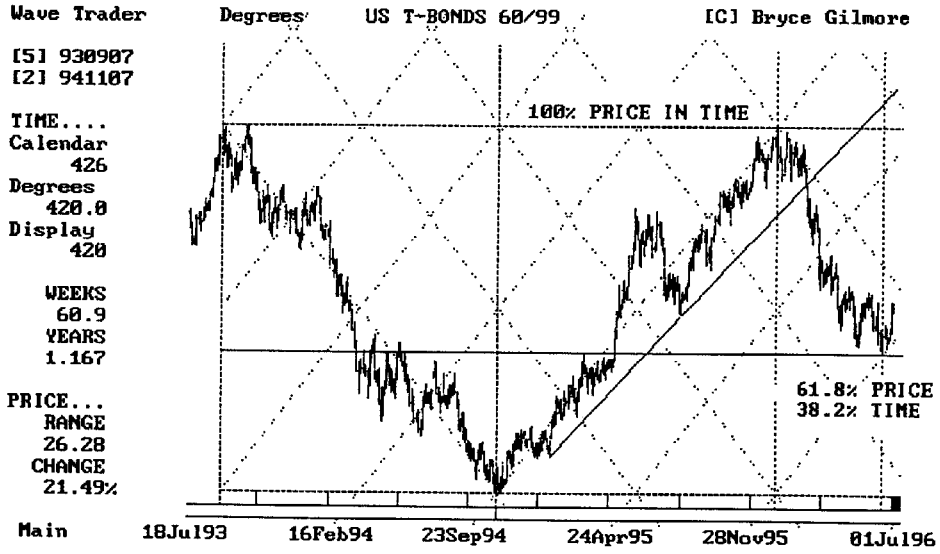



FIG 8.13 PRICE RETRACEMENTS IN TIME RATIOS - ADVANCED TIME AND PRICE

# 9

# Money Management Techniques

To be successful gambling for profit or speculation if you prefer, requires a strict money management plan.

I know why because prior to my introduction into commodity futures I had studied and played most casino games, including being a competent backgammon player. I have been a runner up in the Australian Open and the Victorian Open backgammon championships. Backgammon is a game that relies on the fall of two dice. The probabilities of the result of any dice throw have strict mathematical probabilities. If you understand these probabilities you can play for percentage results, if your opponent fails to do the same, over time you will win.

The futures market is possibly the worlds most even playing field for the speculator. Mainly because you can enter and exit at will. I liken my approach to trading as playing poker without having to put up an ante. Each day I have a chance to see my hand, if I think I have the equivalent of 4 Aces I will make a bet; if not I stay out.

In the long run, by applying money management rules to the probabilities, I can eliminate much of the risk associated with trading.

Mark Douglas, author of "The Disciplined Trader", once said to me in front of Larry Pesavento, "You must decide on a plan of trade selection, never deviate from that plan and then execute your plan flawlessly." In addition he said, "Once you're in the market and start breaking any of your rules, you are out of control."
From my own experience and having been involved with traders and investors the world over I knew I had never heard truer words!
Everything Mark Douglas ever said to me was only another way of expressing my own inner thoughts and feelings. Mark just seems to have a better way to explain it.

**My basic money management rules are:- Divide your investment capital into 18 speculative stakes, control your down-side risk on any one trade to 1 investment stake. Look for a return of 3 to 1 or better on any win. Trade or bet on a plan that has proved to win at least 40% of the time.**

# Think Golf

A trading plan that makes 18 trades with a win/loss ratio of 40-60 at 3 to 1 odds results in 7 wins and 11 losses, 7 by 3 = 21 wins and 11 losses, this results in a capital gain of 50% over 18 trades.

If the ratio of wins to losses can be increased the percentage return increases dramatically, also if you can do better than the 3 to 1 ratio the results increase dramatically.

The way I look at it, it's like a game of golf for a 15 handicapper. If you go out and play 18 holes you will make a bad score on 2 or 3 holes, then you will bogey 4, par 9 and birdie 1 or 2, once in a while you will make eagle.

It's the pars and the birdies that make the difference between a good score and a bad one. When I play golf I don't give in if I start off badly because I know I have 16 or 15 holes to go. If you can maintain a focus on the overall game you can score over the 18 holes. Sometimes you can start off well and then fall into a slump for a few holes, it's a matter of discipline to play out the 18 and arrive back at the club house a winner.

The secret to good golf is that each time you tee up you make your best effort to place yourself in a good position to finish the hole. It's the same with trading, don't hit off unless you give yourself the best chance of success. If you hit off badly pick up the ball and walk to the next tee.

If you want to trade well, think you are playing a game of golf and the game's not over until the 18th. After each 18 you can re-think your plan and move onto the next course.

If you keep your mind right you will eventually become a scratch marker.

Aggressive traders with a reliable trading plan can work on a 9 trade scale up system.

# TRADE SELECTION PROCESS

To make any system work a trade selection process has to remain uniform. It is therefore important to set up a plan for each type of trade selection signal you want to follow.

I would recommend separate allocations of capital be employed for different types of trades.

1. Buying trend line break-outs on trend confirmation.
2. Selling trend line break-outs on trend confirmation.
3. Buying or selling range break-outs on trend confirmation.
4. Selling double tops.
5. Buying bottoms or selling tops on advanced time and price signals.

## ESCALATING RISK

For each plan you should make 18 trades before increasing your original stake.

After 18 trades your results will be easily quantified, you may then wish to modify your plan. Don't increase your stakes just because you are winning, this is a deviation from your original rules.

## CHECKLIST BEFORE MAKING A TRADE

1. Is this a valid trading opportunity basis my trade selection rules?
2. Where have I set my stop-loss limit?
3. Can I accept the risk?

If all the answers are YES then take the trade otherwise reconsider.

**Without a consistent trade selection process combined with a solid money management plan all will be lost.**

# TRADING PLAN CHECKLIST

**Date**..... **Market**.....

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Type of Trade | Buy | Sell |
| Entry Order | ..... | ..... |
| Stoploss Order | ..... | ..... |
| Risk | $..... | |
| Entry Level | ..... | |

Before I pick up the phone to place my order, I promise I have checked out the following condition of the market and the risk I am about to take.

**Elliott Wave Position** **1** **2** **3** **4** **5** **A** **B** **C**

Comments.....

.....

**Trend Indicators**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Trend Wave | Long | Short | Rolling Over |
| Moving Averages 4/18 | Long | Short | Crossing |
| 50 day | Up | Down | flat |
| D M I | Long | Short | Neutral |
| Am I following all of my rules? | | YES | NO |
| Can I accept the risk? | | YES | NO |

# 10
# W.D. Gann Analysis Techniques

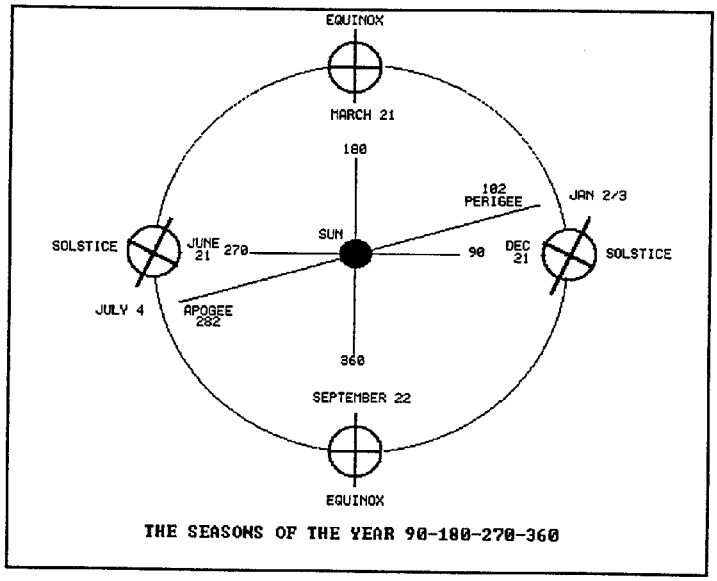
## Time by Degrees

W.D. Gann can be credited for the introduction of time by degrees to the world of technical analysis.

Gann often mentioned the square of 360 and the divisions and multiples of 360 in his work. He was referring to the degrees in the circle.

A year is the dominant natural cycle that influences our lives and our activities. In a solar year we have 365 1/4 days but the circle of 1 year is 360 degrees.

**Time by degrees is not a simple ratio of days in the year, eg., you cannot calculate 1 degree as 365 divided by 360. Time by degrees must be calculated from the position of the Earth relative to the Sun in its orbit of 360 degrees. 1 day is only the time it takes for the Earth to spin on its axis.**



The Earth moves through an elliptical orbit around the Sun, not a perfect circle. As a result the relationship between days and degrees speeds up as the Earth is moving closer to the Sun and slows down as the Earth is moving away from the Sun. The two points in the elliptical orbit where the Earth is closest and furthermost from the Sun are known as the PERIGEE and the APOGEE.

The seasons of the year are determined by the TILT or AXIS of the Earth. As the Earth circles around the Sun the direct path of the Suns rays move in relationship to the surface of the Earth. The hours of sunlight vary in length from day to day. If you live in the southern hemisphere the shortest day is the June Solstice and the longest day is the December Solstice. On the Equinox days the daylight hours are equal to the hours of darkness.

Due to the elliptical orbit of the Earth the relationship between days and degrees varies.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0-90 | 89 days | 90-180 | 89 days |
| 180-270 | 93 days | 270-360 | 94 days |

If you are comparing a time cycle that occurred between 0-180 degrees and one that occurred between 180-360 degrees the calendar day counts will vary dramatically with the degree counts.

**Counting time by degrees keeps seasonal time periods uniform.** To calculate TIME BY DEGREES requires the use of a planetary ephemeris.

## Critical Seasonal Dates

Gann taught that the cardinal points of the year were important to watch for change in trend.
The **Equinox** and **Solstice** as well as the **Perigee** and **Apogee** days are natural cyclic events. If you study past markets you will find an abundance of trend changes falling on or close to these dates.

## Anniversary Dates

Gann also taught that it was important to watch the anniversary dates of past trend change dates in any market for a reversal in trend signal.

## Counting Time between Change in Trend dates

TIME COUNTS using special numbers can often pinpoint future dates where change in trend will occur.

Time counts in days, **degrees**, weeks, months and **years** are made from extreme intermediate degree market highs and lows.

Gann taught that by counting **TIME BY DEGREES**, in squares of **90** and **144** as well as divisions of a year from prior market highs and lows of importance, would produce clusters of future dates where a change in trend could occur.

Gann's square of 52 was a weekly square used on weekly charts, ie., divisions of a year.

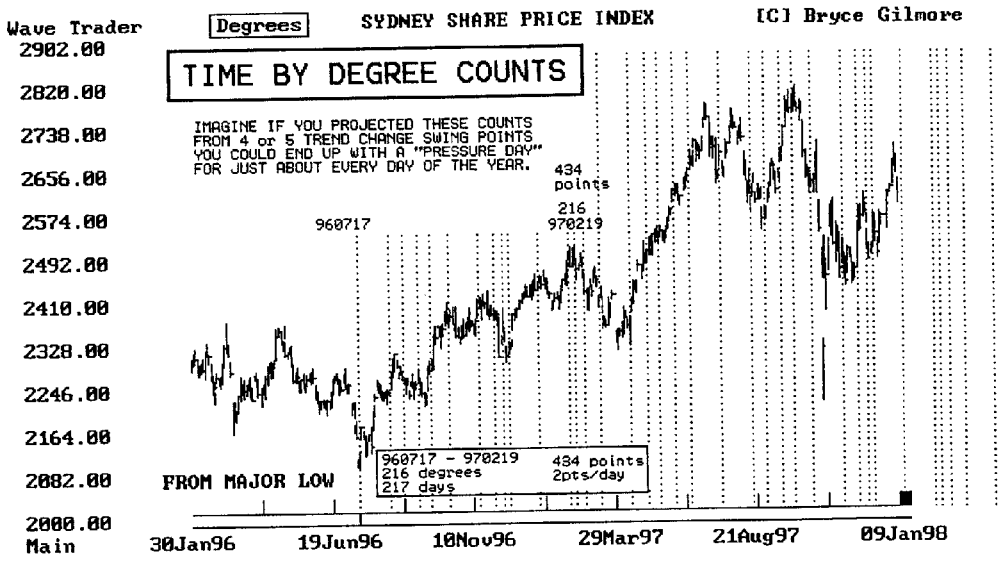
## Time By Degree Counts

This methodology has become a trade mark for Gann's supposed success in predicting a future change in trend date for any free trading market.
Although the calculations have a validity in nature they must also be qualified as to their true value.
I have found that many change in trend tops or bottoms in markets conform to some of Gann's time counts, I have also found that many did not!

To count off TIME BY DEGREES Gann style all one has to do is calculate the future date ? degrees from a known high or low date. If you extrapolate the process from numerous past highs and lows you will construct a table of dates which will highlight clusters of future dates. These future dates are a warning date where change in trend may occur.

The standard divisions of a year of 360 degrees which could be important using this Gann technique are, my version of important counts are highlighted:-

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 30 | **180** | 315 | 600 |
| 45 | 210 | 330 | 615 |
| 60 | **216** | **360** | **624** |
| **72** | **223** | **432** | **630** |
| **90** | **240** | 450 | **720** |
| **120** | **255** | 480 | |
| 135 | **270** | **509** | |
| **144** | **288** | **540** | |
| 150 | 300 | **582** | |




I've given this example as it helps to explain the good and the bad associated with measuring time by degrees without the qualifying tools.

The February high in the Share Price Index came in on time by degrees and an associated Gann vibration of 2 points per day from the July 1996 low.

## Other Time Counts Important To Gann Methodology

**SQUARES AND POWERS OF NUMBERS 3 to 7**

| No | ^2 | ^3 | ^4 | ^5 | ^6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | 9 | 27 | 81 | 243 | **729** |
| 4 | 16 | 64 | **256** | **1024** | 4096 |
| 5 | 25 | 125 | **625** | 3125 | |
| 6 | 36 | **216** | **1296** | | |
| 7 | 49 | **343** | 2401 | | |

It is also worth noting that the powers of 2 in the higher numbers are important.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | 128 | **512** | 2048 |

# Gann Swing Charts

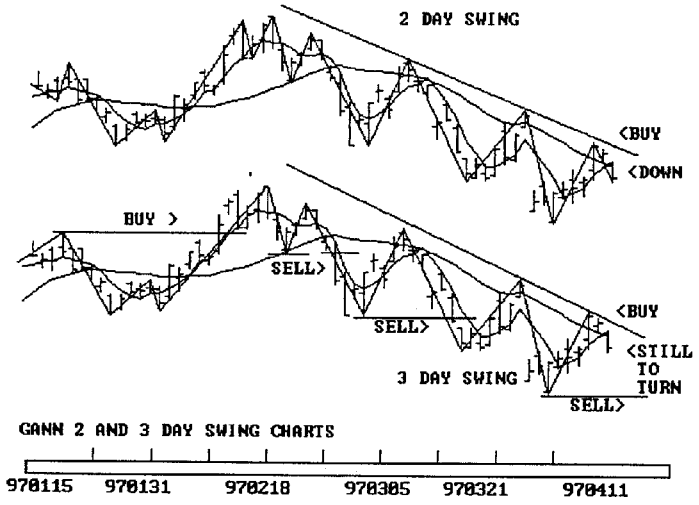
The Gann swing chart is a simple indicator to keep you aware of the short term trend. Gann recommended 2 types of swing charts.

**1/. 2 day swing chart.** **2/. 3 day swing chart.**
The swing chart swings up and down depending on the current days trading range when compared with the prior 2 or 3 days trading range.

The rules for the 2 or 3 day chart are as follows:-

1. The trend is up when the market makes higher highs without crossing below the prior 2 or 3 day low.
2. The trend is down when the market makes lower lows without crossing above the prior 2 or 3 day high.
3. When prices are very active, ie., wide range days in a blow off move you can record a swing on a 1 day reaction for the 2 day chart.
4. When prices are very active you can record a swing on the 3 day chart if it makes 3 consecutive days with new lows or highs.
5. Both charts are based on highs and lows not closing price.

**Over-balancing of price and time.**
In an advancing market watch the price ranges of the counter trend moves. Once the next reaction has exceeded the price range of the previous, price is said to be over-balanced and the trend is changing. The opposite works in a falling market. As each trend matures reactions should be reducing in both time and price.



# Squaring Price Into Time & Time Into Price

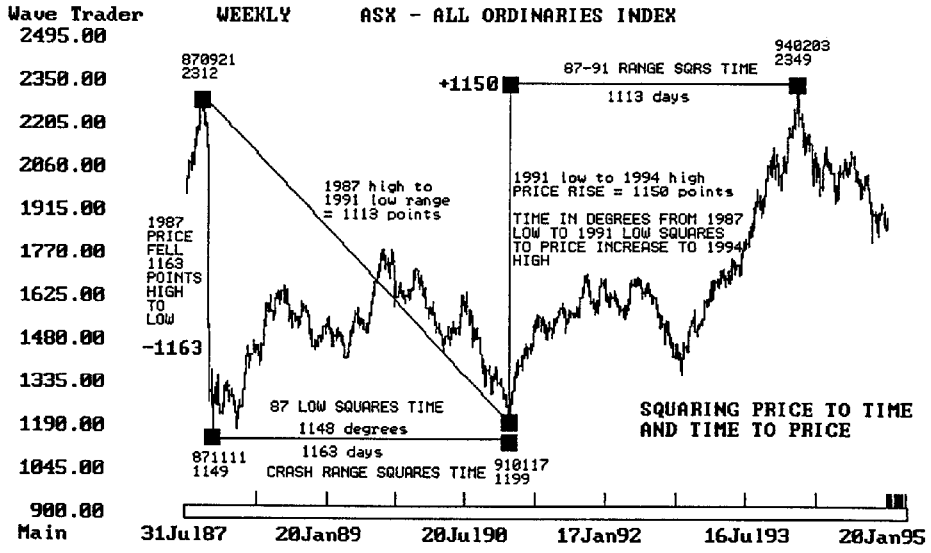
One of Gann's techniques of analysis for determining market tops and bottoms was to "square" price into time and time into price.

There are 3 distinct approaches:-

1. **Squaring a high or low price forwarded in time.**
   In the example below the All Ords 1987 low was 1149. The first "square" of 1149 counted in "degrees" fell within 1 day of the 1991 low.

2. **Squaring a price range forward in time.**
   There are 2 examples below, the points decline between the 1987 high and the 1987 low was 1163 points. The calendar day count between the 1987 low and the 1991 low was 1163 days exactly.
   The price range between the 1987 high and the 1991 low was 1113 points, the calendar days from the 1991 low to the 1994 high was 1113 days exactly.

3. **Squaring time between highs and lows forward in price units.**
   My first example is below, the time between the 1987 low and the 1991 low came out at 1148 degrees. The points rise to the 1994 high was 1150 points.



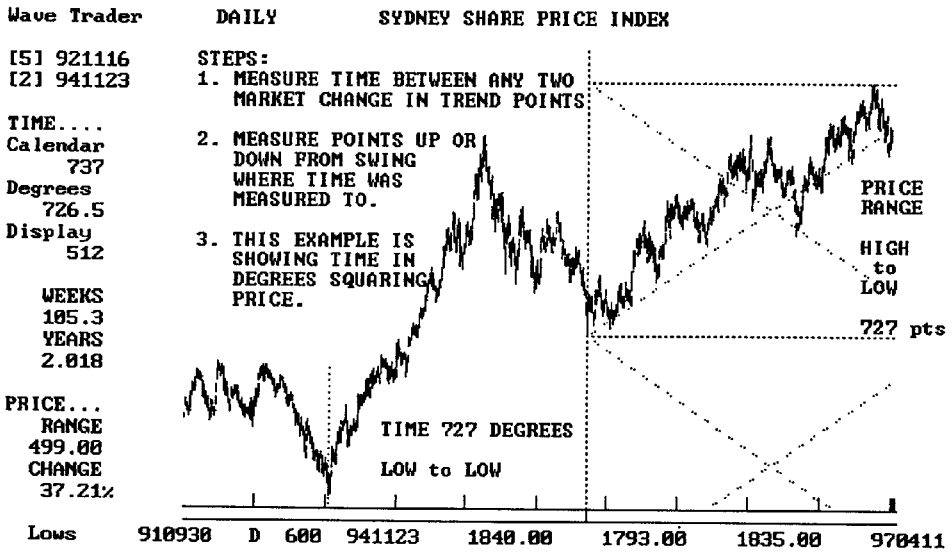
When squaring time into price units you can take the time between any two market change in trend dates. The price units are calculated from the ending date of the time cycle you are going to "square".

Just recently I saw this example "square" up at the 19th February 1997 high.

> The time between the 1992 low and the 1994 low was 726.5 degrees.
>
> The price units between the 1994 low, 1793 and the 19th February high, 2520 was 727 points.

If I can find perfect examples of Gann's approach to squaring time & price and time to price 40+ years after Gann passed away, then these techniques of analysis are worth monitoring, even if one might feel they may be self fulfilling.

**My comment:**
The time period from the 1991 low to the recent 19th February 1997 high was 2225 days. The price range squaring between the 1987 high to the 1991 (1113 points) low went 1 square at the 1994 high and 2 squares on the 20th February 1997.
I was expecting a high on the 20th February 1997 within 1 day and let everyone know at our 8th February 1997 seminar in Southport. There can be some minor inaccuracies using these techniques due to the time of the day the lows or highs are made.



## Gann Angles & Gann Zero Angles

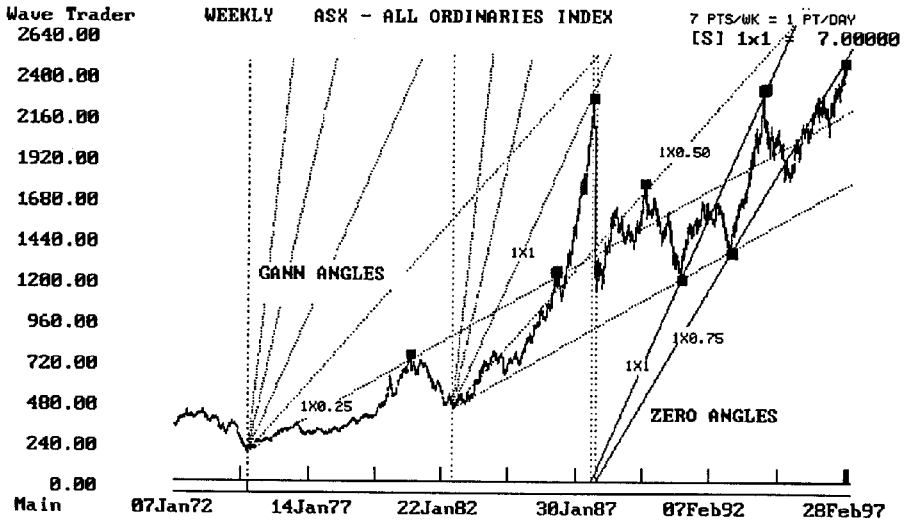
Gann angles and Gann zero angles are another technique for squaring price to time.

1. Angles are drawn from prior highs or lows at ratios of 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2 & 4 points per day. At times in the future a market reversal will occur on the value of the angle. The Gann interpretation is that at this moment price is square with time.

   **Example:** The 1x1 angle (1 point per degree) from the 1982 low intersected the 1987 high on the all ordinaries index. The time from the 1982 low to the 1987 high was 1872 degrees and the price range was 1869 points. A FIBONACCI ratio of 13 times 144.

2. Zero angles are angles drawn up from 0 (zero) beneath an important high or low. When a market reversal occurs on the value of the angle it means that the current reversal value has squared time with the high or low from which it began.

   **Example:** The 1x1 angle (1 point per degree) drawn up from under the 1987 high reached the 1199.6, 1991 low after 1199 degrees from the 1987 high had elapsed.



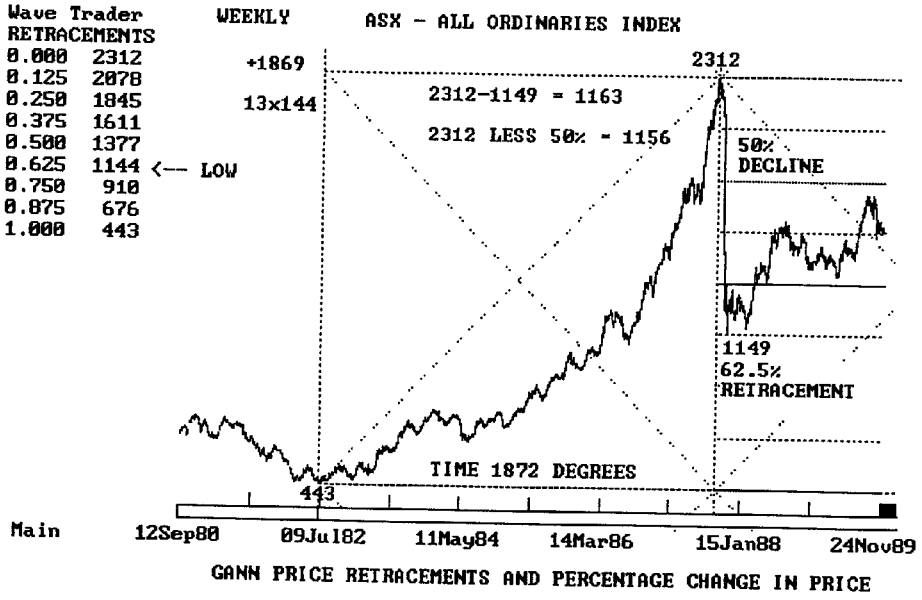
# Gann Price Retracement Levels Of A Prior Range

This technique of analysis allows you to relate price range to price range geometrically.

The units risen in a bull market are related to the units fallen in a bear market or vice versa. This technique is useful in any time frame, relationships can be worked out between moves which occur very short term or long term.

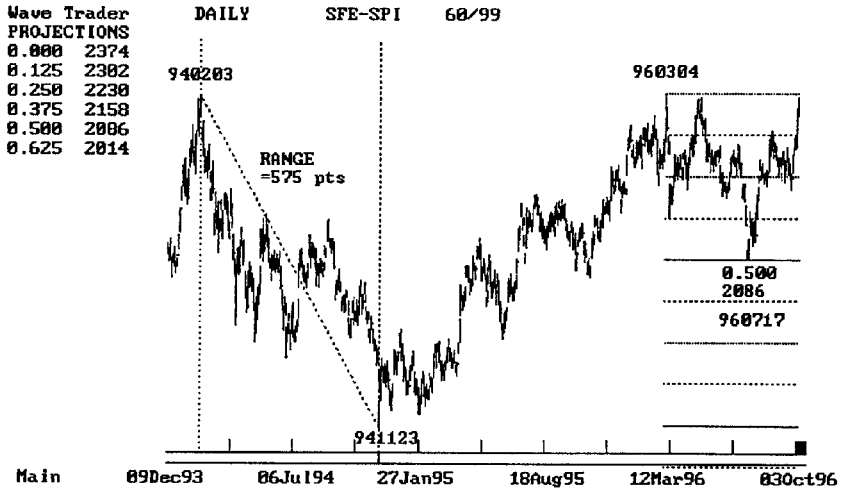
Gann taught students that ratio retracements of prior ranges were very important for determining change of trend and worked with 1/8ths of the prior range. The 50% level is the most important level of a prior range according to Gann. Unfortunately the world is not a perfect place and natural geometry often requires other relationships for the continuing price structure to remain geometric.

Elliott wave recommends ratios of 0.382, 0.50, 0.618 as the most important. We have found that there is another element of geometry involved and ratios of 0.577 and 0.707 that are harmonically related to the square and the cube can be equally important under certain circumstances.

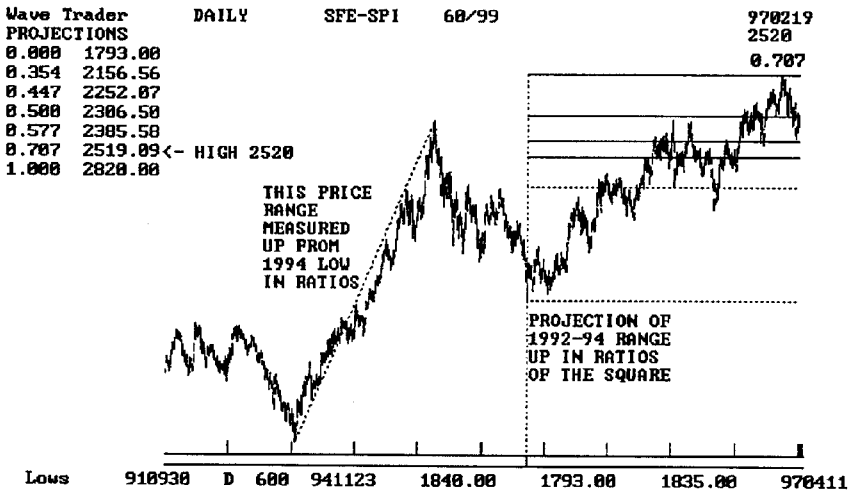


## Projection Levels Of An Alternate Range

Price ranges between alternate trends of similar degree will often relate when a market reverses trend without making an identifiable retracement level of the prior range. To calculate possible support or resistance levels in advance project ratios of the alternate trend from the beginning of the current trend.




PROJECTING AN ALTERNATE RANGE OF SIMILAR DEGREE




TECHNIQUE FOR PROJECTING ALTERNATE WAVE FOR PRICE TARGETS

## Projecting Extension Levels Of A Prior Range

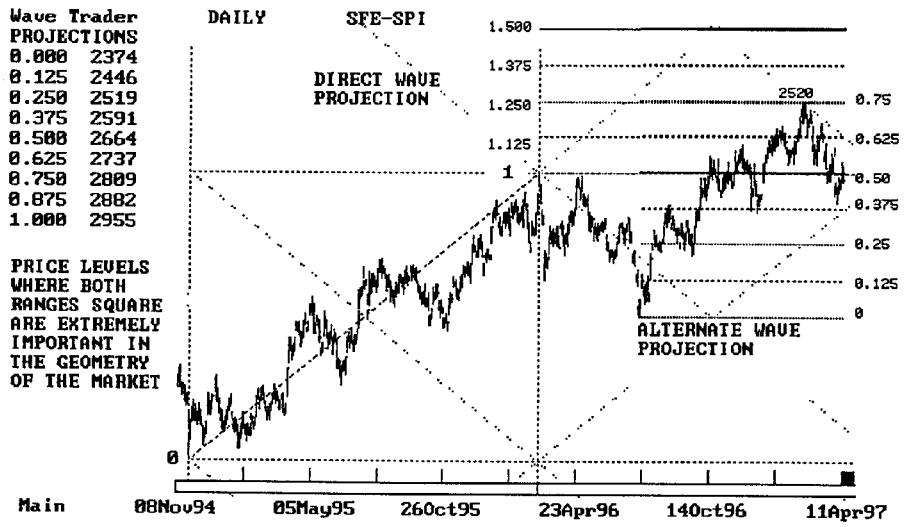
In case anyone is in doubt about the importance of the 2520 INTERMEDIATE DEGREE price level in the Sydney Share Price Index this example will help clear up the picture.

Projections of this nature can be made in 1/8ths, 1/3rds and ratios 0.382, 0.618, do not leave out 0.577 and 0.707.

If one had gone through the exercise of projecting future price targets, prior to the 19th February 1997 high, the 2518-20 level stood out as being very important within the unfolding price geometry. Also 2520 is equal to 7 times 360.

Price levels of extreme importance can be identified when two or more major wave retracements or projections fall within a point or two of each other. We call these levels clusters. When a market trades into a strong price support or resistance level we can evaluate from the daily pattern and the time relationships with the past how important the level may turn out to be.

Technical analysis is a discipline of probabilities. Many of the probabilities can be calculated in advance, this does not mean they will be fulfilled, yet when they are working they will be confirmed by the market itself.




DIRECT PRICE RANGE AND ALTERNATE PRICE RANGE PROJECTIONS

# Unfolding Price Ranges In Trends Of Similar Degree

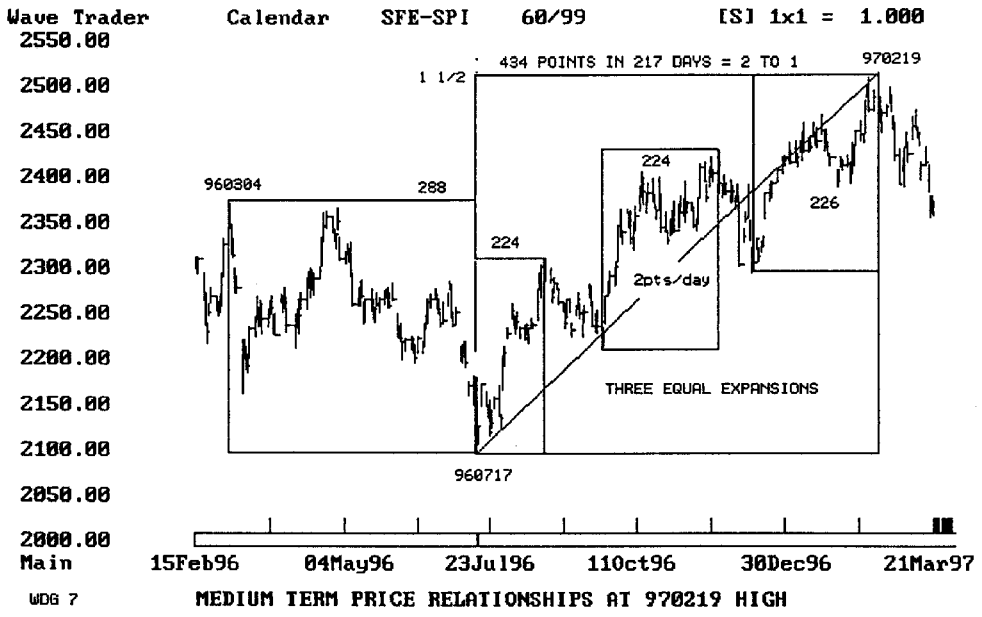
Unfolding price ranges can relate to each other in two ways:-

1. Each impulse range can relate by a ratio of the preceding range of similar degree.

In the example below of the Sydney Share Price Index expanding upwards from the 2086 low, 17th July 1996 to the 2520 high, 19th February 1997, there were three distinct low to high ranges of equal proportion. After the first two expansions of 224 points were recognised, myself and several analysts I know calculated that 2518 would equal a triple wave range of similar degree when measured from the take off point 13th December 1996 at 2294. The fact that 2518 fitted in with all the other price projections confirmed it as a very important level.

When the 2520 high was made time and price squared at 2 points per day from the 17th July 1996 low, another important Gann observation!

When looking for additional confirmation of price squarings you can monitor both the cash market and the futures contract, it will help you immensely.



2. The last impulse range can relate by a ratio to the overall move in the current series of waves.

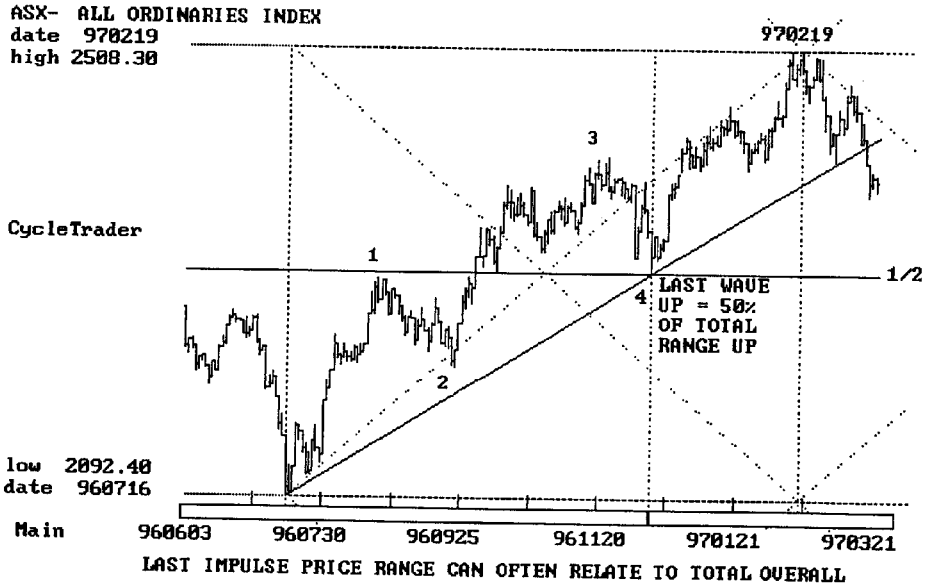
**Example:**
The impulse waves in the All Ordinaries Index, up to the February high, were not the same price ranges as the SPI, yet they were working to their own geometry.

The impulse wave 5 from the December low, wave 4, topped out as 50% of the total range from July 1996.

I have seen many instances where the 4th wave low or high relates to the overall range by a geometry of 0.382, 0.500, 0.618, 0.667 and 0.707.

If you want to project these price levels in advance take the price units between the beginning of the trend, ie., 0 to 4 and add the reciprocal value of the ratios. for 0.500 add 1.000, for 0.618 add 1.618, for 0.707 add 2.414.

INCIDENTLY the wave 2 in the example below subdivided the total range at the 0.707 level. This means that 4-5 was 0.707 of 2 to the high.



# Divisions Of A Range Identify Unfolding Geometry

In a bear trend of 3 waves A-B-C the C wave could even be 0.707 of the total decline.
There was an instance of this in the SPI decline between May and July 1996.

To project a C wave of 0.707 of the total range multiply the price units between high (B) and B by 2.414 and deduct the result from the price of B.

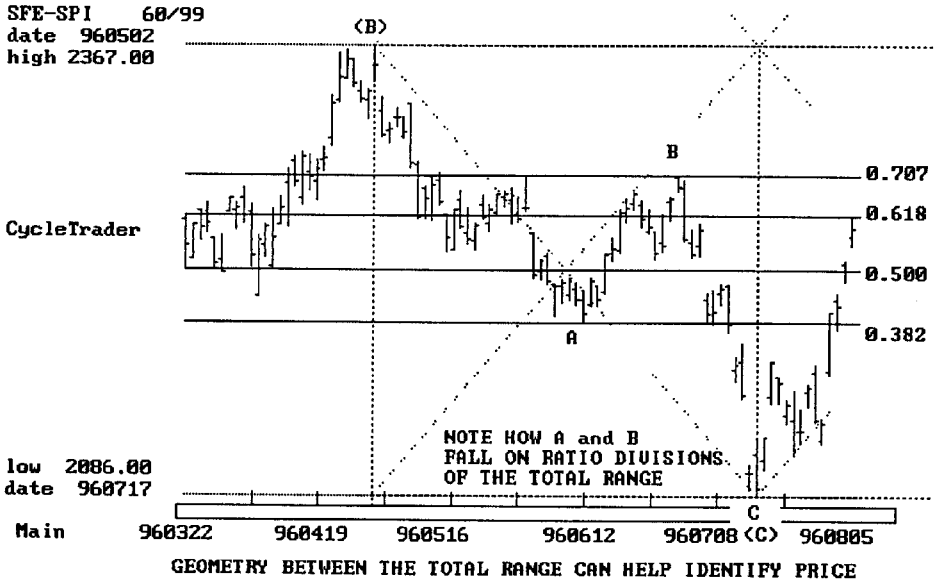
If B-C is going to be 0.707 of the total range then (B)-B will be 0.293 (1.000 - 0.707). 2.414 times 0.293 = 1.000.

Example:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| [B] | 960502 | high | 2367 |
| A | 960613 | low | 2194 |
| B | 960702 | high | 2285 |
| C | 960717 | low | 2086 |

2367 - 2285 = 82 x **2.414** = 198 2285 - 2086 = 199

2367 - 2194 = 173 x **0.618** = 107 2194 - 2086 = 108



## SFE - Sydney Share Price Index - 1991 Low

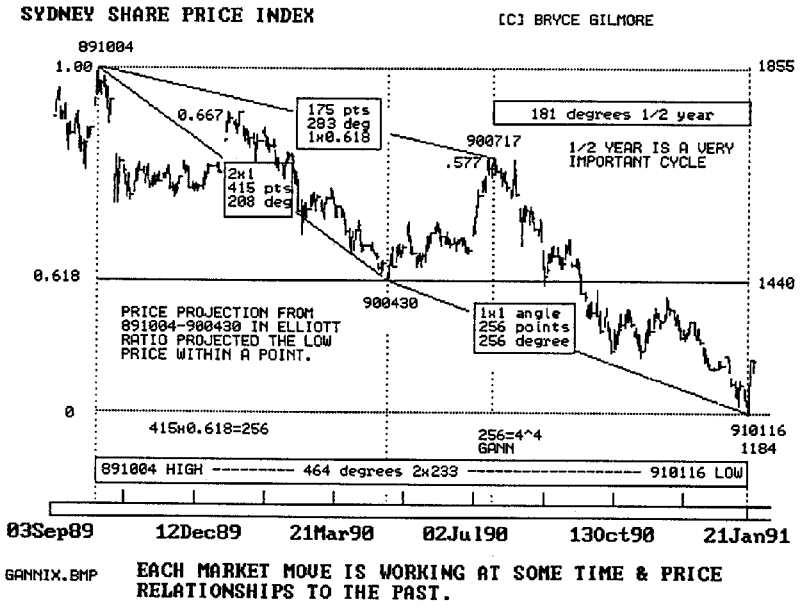
It is important to understand the intricate ways markets can relate in time and price. W.D. Gann and R.N. Elliott opened my eyes and I will never forget it.

By combining both of their disciplines, together with pattern and trend and long term cycle analysis it is possible to explain every market reversal of trend that is important.

At the time of the 1991 low in the All Ordinaries Index I noted the following time and price relationships within the Share Price Index which is the futures derivative. I have often mentioned these relationships to students but, this is the first time I have put them into print. If you study everything contained in this text you will be prepared when similar situations repeat in the future.

Use my examples to get an idea of what to look for when a market changes trend, if you explore the past it will open your eyes to the power possible from this knowledge.

**Keep a record of important events**

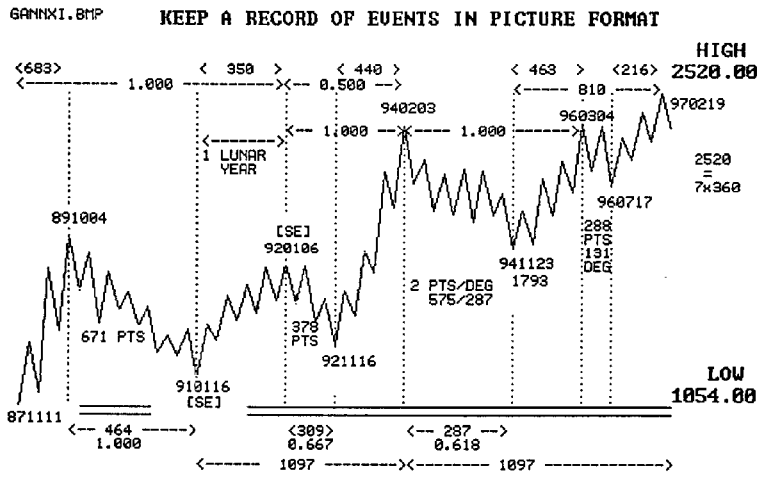


Since the 1987 crash the Sydney Share Price Index has traded through 3 major bear markets.

It's important for the future to note that the 1992 decline and the 1994 decline were ratios in time of the 1989-1991 bear market. Any future bear market should relate in time, by ratio, to one of these prior bear markets.

I know that in the future we will experience another bear market similar to one of these, especially in regards to a large price decline. Once the next bear market takes hold I will be looking at future dates that fall on ratios of time to one of these bear markets.

At most major market reversals you will find perfect cycles of time generated from prior highs and lows. Often but not always the TIME or PRICE counts fall on important numbers mentioned on pages 10.3 and 10.4.




Gann repeatedly states in his writings and books, "The future is just a repetition of the past, there is nothing new under the Sun."

The future is working out time and price to that which went before.

If you are prepared to study the past, then, the future will explain itself as it unfolds.

# 11
# R.N. Elliott Wave Analysis

R.N. Elliott introduced his thesis of wave analysis to market watchers back in the 1930's.

Ralph N. Elliott was a retired engineer, who because of health reasons began an exhaustive study into market analysis. Elliott developed his theory, based on natural law, of the way the US share market expanded and contracted, ie., the time and price relationships between bull and bear markets during their development and adjustment stages. He later worked on Wall Street operating a market advisory service.

**Elliott's basic tenet was, "All waves of similar degree will relate in both TIME & PRICE amplitude."**

Whilst I have already explained the many facets of TIME & PRICE relationships and the way they can occur within a markets structure, it would be careless of me not to review Elliott's teachings in this manual, as I subconsiously use them on a day to day basis myself.

## ELLIOTT WAVE STRUCTURES

To keep track of the stages a bull or bear market moves through, Ralph Elliott developed a lettering system to keep track of waves of similar degree.

Waves are broken down into stages from:-

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **CYCLE** | **I, II, III, IV, V** | |
| **PRIMARY** | **[1] [2] [3] [4] [5]** | **[A] [B] [C]** |
| **INTERMEDIATE** | **(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)** | **(A) (B) (C)** |
| **MINOR** | **1 2 3 4 5** | **A B C** |
| **MINUTE** | **i ii iii iv v** | **a b c** |

Each completed lesser degree wave sequence completes a single wave of higher degree, ie., 1-2-3-4-5 of MINOR degree could complete either wave (1), (3) or (5) of INTERMEDIATE degree. Wave A-B-C of MINOR degree would complete either wave (2) or (4) of INTERMEDIATE degree.

# Elliott's Basic Counting Theory

**BULL MARKETS**
Elliott's rules state that each expansion will unfold in a 5 wave sequence or 7 or 9 waves with extensions.

Waves 1, 3, 5, 7 & 9 will be impulse moves MADE UP OF 5 WAVES in the direction of the primary trend.

Waves 2, 4, 6 & 8 will be corrections to the main trend MADE UP OF 3 WAVES as an A-B-C.

**BEAR MARKETS**
In a bear market the A - wave will most likely contain 5 legs, the B - wave 3 legs and the C - wave 5 legs.

**IMPULSE WAVES**
Impulse waves determine the trend and contain a minimum of 5 legs.

**CORRECTIVE WAVES**
Corrective waves normally contain 3 legs.

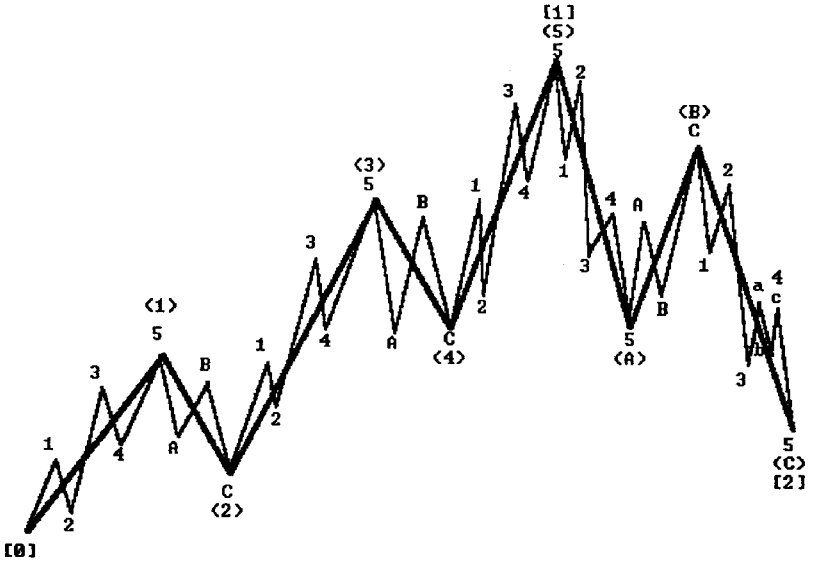



FIG 11.01 EXAMPLE OF ELLIOTT WAVE COUNTING TO LABEL MARKET STRUCTURES

**There are several important rules one should note about Elliott Wave.**

These are:-

1. The overall trend is established by the direction (up or down) of the waves containing 5 leg sequences.

2. Corrective wave patterns in a 5 wave sequence will ALTERNATE. Wave 2 and 4 will alternate in appearance, for instance a simple wave will be followed by a complex looking wave or vice versa.

3. Wave 3 is usually the strongest impulse in appearance and will be accompanied by strong indications of overbought or oversold.

4. Wave 4 corrections will normally terminate within the area of the previous wave 4 of lesser degree. Often a wave 4 will terminate on a 38.2% price retracement of the previous impulse wave or 38.2% of the total advance in the series.

5. Triangles in 4th waves indicate strength in the wave 5.

6. Extensions can only occur in impulse waves and are very common, extensions are far more likely in 3rd or 5th waves.

7. A break of the channel line extended from the termination of waves [2] and [4] signals a major change in trend.

Anyone wishing to make a comprehensive study of Elliott Wave can do so by studying the following two books.

**MASTERING ELLIOTT WAVE by Glenn Neely,** 1990, is probably the most complete work I have seen on Elliott Wave analysis. Neely deals with the real world and offers an exceptional insight into the patterns formed by market price activity. (223 pages) Neely in my opinion is the expert of Elliott Wave!

**ELLIOTT WAVE THEORY by Frost and Prechter,** 1978, is the first book on Elliott Wave I started with. This book contains all the basic information but, it is difficult for a novice; it needs to be read 4 or 5 times before the concepts begin to become clear. (190 pages)

## The Overall Trend Is Established By The Direction Of The 5 Wave Sequences

The main benefit of this knowledge lies in the fact that trends propagate (grow on themselves). Once the minor waves start growing in 5 waves you can expect the intermediate and primary waves to do the same.

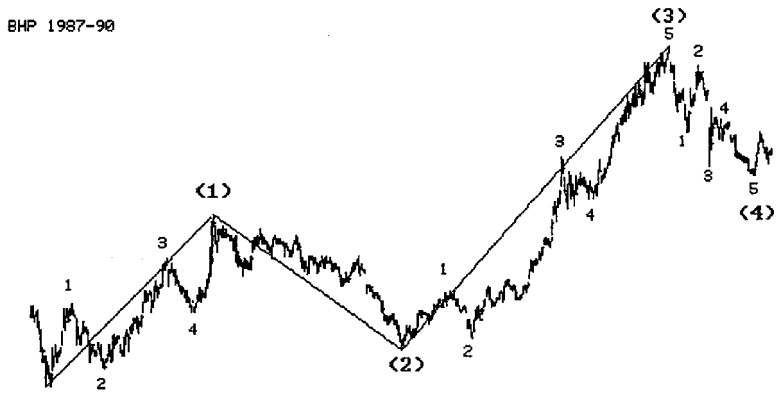



FIG 11.02 TREND IS ESTABLISHED BY THE 5 WAVE SEQUENCES

Generally when a trend is well established the corrections become shallower and shorter in duration. In a strong trend counter trend reactions generally last no longer than 3 days.

Degrees of wave movement can be evaluated by comparing their price ranges and time duration.

For instance when a subsequent correction OVERBALANCES the price and/or time of a prior correction, the move in progress, is usually of a higher degree and the wave count can be re-evaluated.

Continuation of the trend is signalled by the price breaking out to new highs or lows when the reactions are less than those that went before.

Wave 3 in any 5 wave sequence will usually be the strongest and it normally ends with the trend indicators in an extremely overbought or oversold condition.

Corrections ie., waves 2 and 4 should normally alternate in appearance. Corrective waves take on either "simple" or complex" forms. A "simple" form will normally be followed by a "complex" form or vice-versa.

## Overbought & Oversold Markets (Wave 3)

I have noted that on nearly all occasions, wave 3 in a BULL market impulse ends with the market in an **overbought** condition.

Wave C in a correction often ends with the market in an **oversold** condition.

The best indicator for OVERBOUGHT or OVERSOLD is the RSI and DMI.

**RSI** - Relative Strength Index 10 day
Overbought when above 80
Oversold when below 20.

**DMI** - Directional Movement Index 10 day
Overbought when the + DI rises above 40 and the DMI rises above the +DI.
Extremely overbought when the -DI remains below 10 for 3 days or more.

Reverse applies to for Oversold signals.

The RSI and the DMI are analysis tools designed by J.Welles Wilder Jr. More of his work can be found in his book **NEW CONCEPTS IN TECHNICAL TRADING SYSTEMS, 1978.**

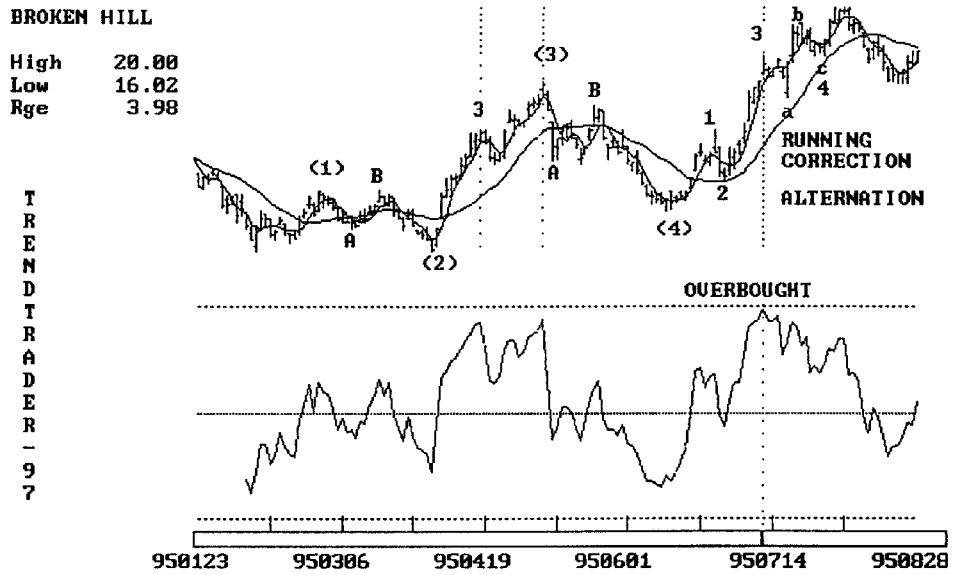



FIG 11.03 RELATIVE STRENGTH INDEX READINGS AT WAVE 3 TOPS IN BHP

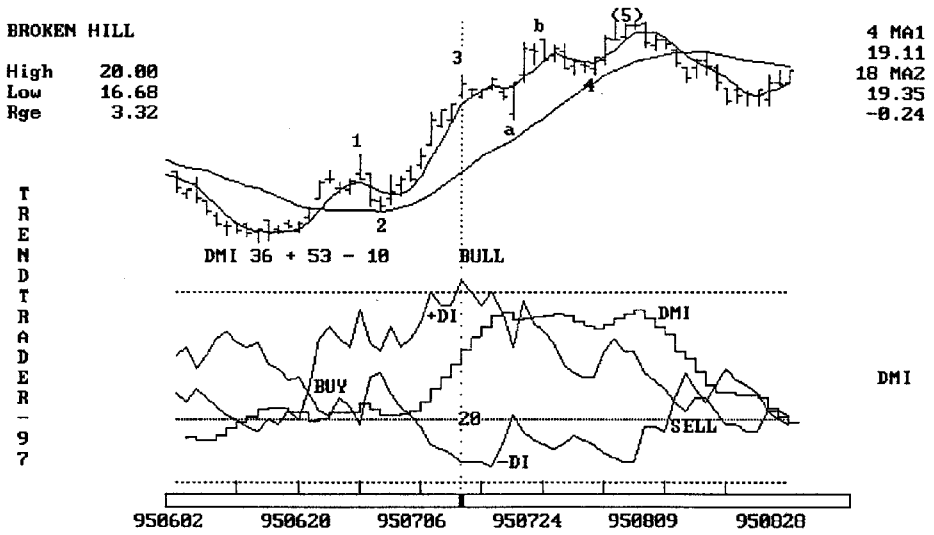



FIG 11.04 DIRECTIONAL MOVEMENT INDEX (DMI) READINGS OVERBOUGHT AT WAVE 3

Monitoring trend indicators on a daily basis keeps one alert to the possibility of a change in trend.

I have noticed over the years the more people learn about Elliott Wave the more diverse their opinion of wave counts become.

**KEEP IT SIMPLE!**

The basic concept is that BULL markets will unfold in a series of 5 waves or sections. 3 will be up and 2 will be corrections. The end of each wave will be labelled 1-2-3-4-5. Waves 2 and 4 are corrective waves. Waves 1, 3, 5 are impulse waves.

IMPULSE WAVES can be subdivided into 5 waves of lesser degree.

Extensions can form in IMPULSE waves, ie., instead of 5 waves they could extend to 7 or 9 waves. Extensions can form in waves 1, 3 or 5 but never in all.

Over long periods I look for a place to identify a wave 3 and then work backwards for my wave count.

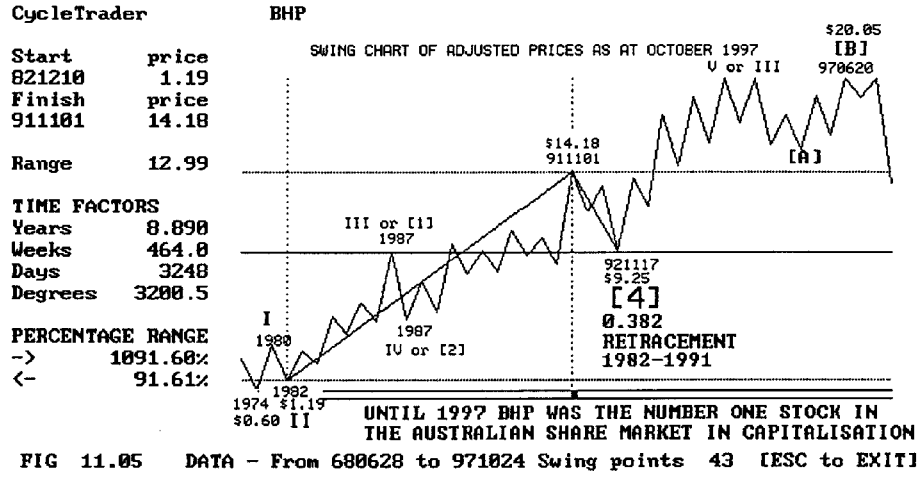
## Wave 4 Corrections

**Wave 4 corrections will normally terminate within the area of the previous wave 4 of lesser degree. Often a wave 4 will terminate on a 38.2% price retracement of the previous impulse wave or 38.2% of the total advance in the series.**

This is an important observation and can help you set price objectives after identifying a wave 3 termination.

In my first book GEOMETRY OF MARKETS I used BHP (Broken Hill Proprietary Limited) for an extensive example of analysis techniques. It seemed very clear to me back in early 1988 that the high made in 1987, prior to the crash, displayed the character of a 3rd wave of cycle degree. In retrospect the retracement in the 1987 crash was just short of a 50% retracement of all gains made from the 1974 low. Since 1988 this market rose in value more than 2 times its value at the 1987 pre-crash high.

The 921117 low in BHP can clearly be identified as a PRIMARY wave 4 as it retraced 38.2% of all gains made from the 1982 low. This infact gives rise to the question of the 1987 high being a PRIMARY wave 1 instead of a CYCLE wave III. This being the case the $20.05 high is potentially a CYCLE wave III.



There have been two other major instances of 38.2% price retracements in BHP over recent years. The November 28, 1989 low and the April 5, 1994 low.

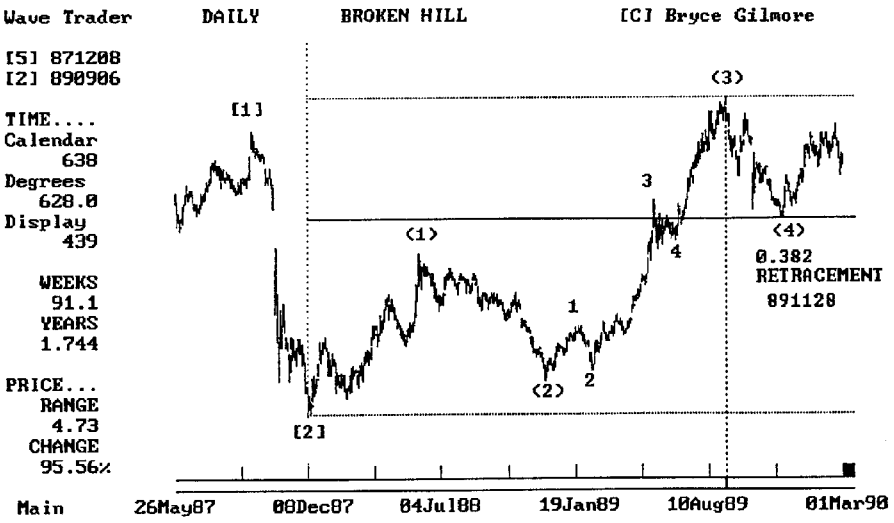



FIG 11.06 4th WAVE AS A 38.2% RETRACEMENT IN THE AREA OF LESSER DEGREE 4

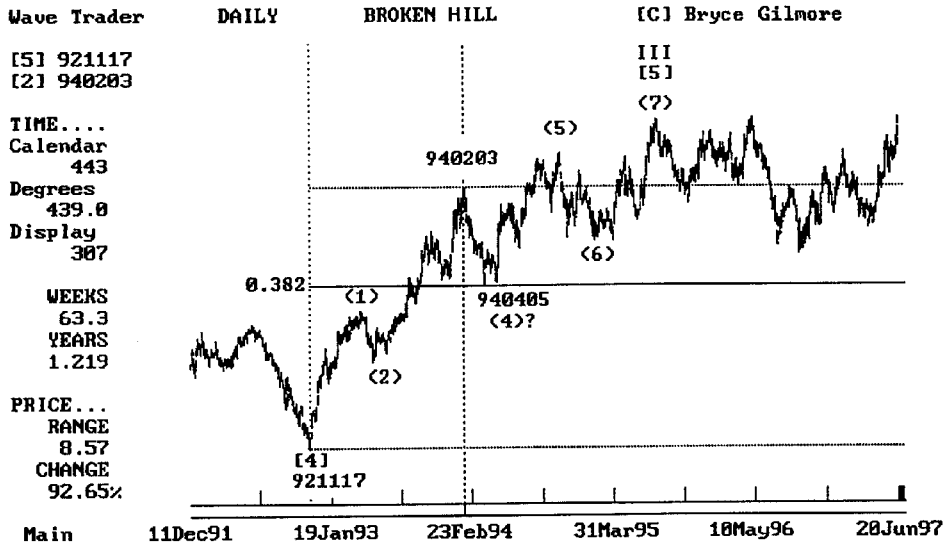



FIG 11.07 38.2% RETRACEMENT LEADS TO THE CONCLUSION OF A 4th WAVE

## Rule of Alternation

**Elliott Wave states that corrective patterns (waves) in a five wave sequence will ALTERNATE. ie., waves 2 and 4 will take on a completely different appearance.**

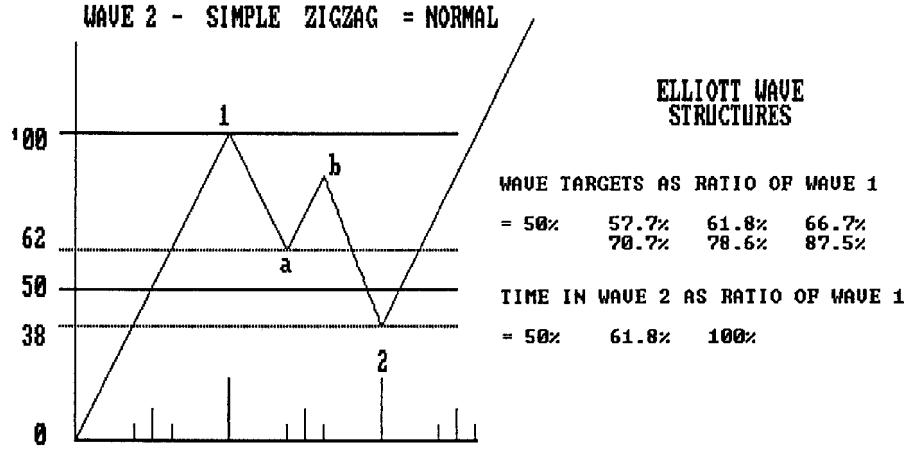
Elliott gave names to the patterns formed in corrective moves:-

**Zig Zag**
**Complex Flat**
**Double Three**
**Running Correction**
**Symmetrical Triangle**
**Ascending Triangle**
**Descending Triangle**
**Expanding Triangle**

Triangles are far more common in 4th waves so one should expect the wave 2 to take the form of a simple zig zag, complex flat, double three or running correction.

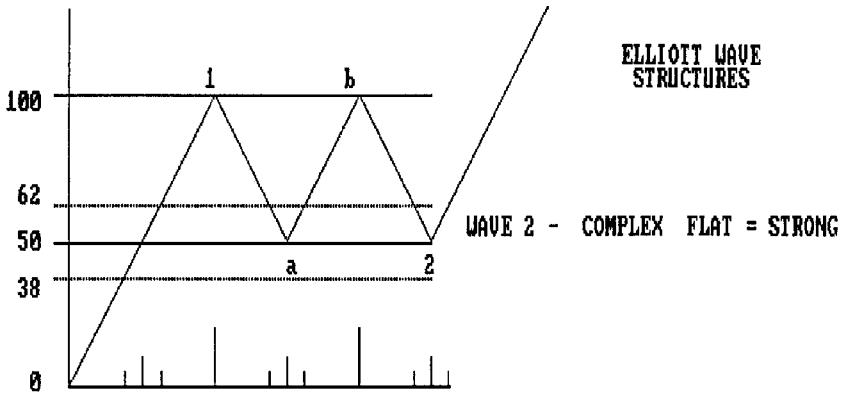
**Wave 2**

1. Wave 2 normally retraces at least 50% of all the gains made in the wave 1.
2. If Wave 2 is a Zig Zag it can often retrace 61.8%, 70.7% , 78.6%.
3. Wave 2 normally expires on a direct time relationship measured from the duration of Wave 1.



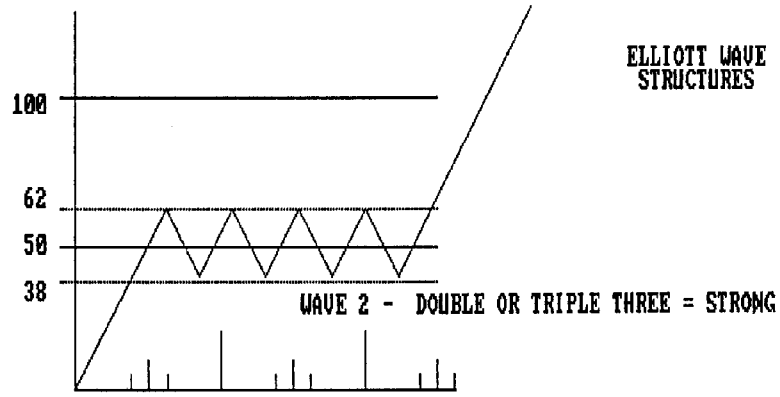
**Complex Flat**

A complex flat correction implies power in the 3rd wave. A sideways movement in market price over an extended period implies accumulation. When the market eventually breaks to a new high it is doing so because there are more buyers than sellers.



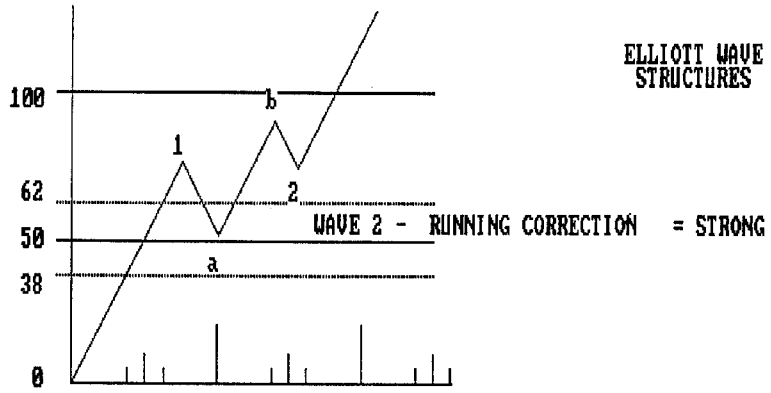

**Double Three**

The double three wave 2 implies a longer period of accumulation. As the stock or commodity moves into stronger hands. Once prices break up to higher levels there will be little to none available, resulting in an explosive move in the wave 3.



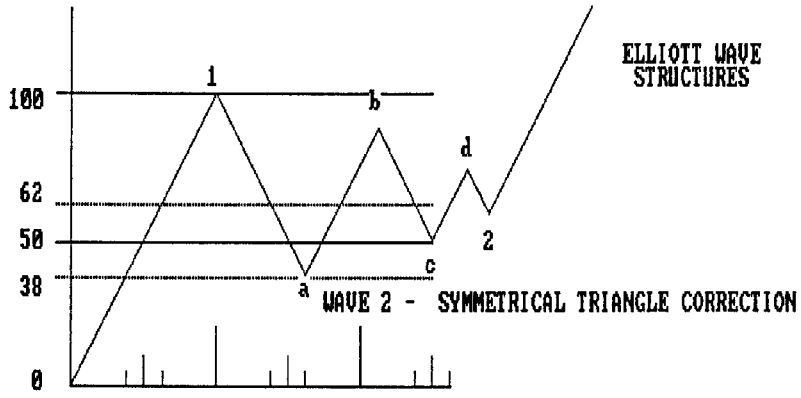
**Running Correction**

A running correction occurs in an explosive market. Usually because some fundamental news insites a stampede of speculators to buy without worrying what price they pay.




**Symmetrical Triangle**

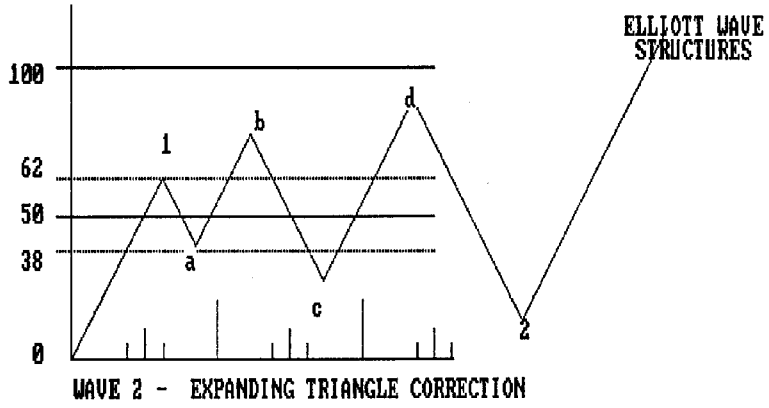
A symmetrical triangle occurs in a market where the buyers and sellers are fairly balanced. Volumes continue to decline as the triangle is formed. Each of the legs a, b, c, d, e contract in size inside the range of the prior leg. Quite often the price ranges of the legs will relate by a factor of 0.618.

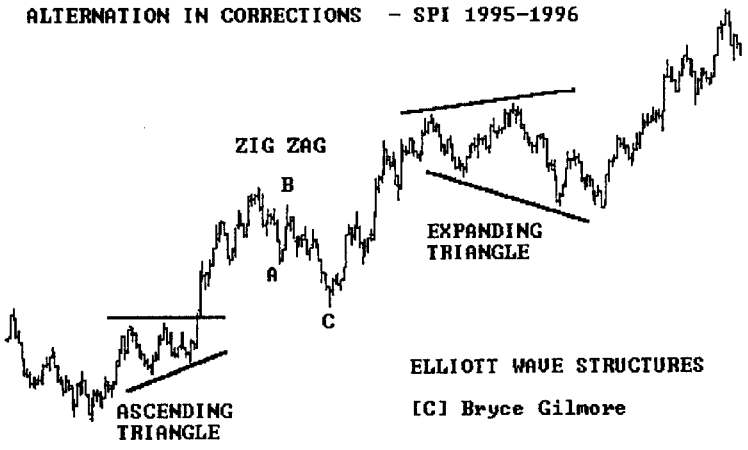


**Expanding Triangle**

The expanding triangle more often than not forms over long periods of time. The market continues to trade in ever expanding ranges making higher highs in the rallies and lower lows in the declines.

Expanding triangles are very hard to predict and only become obvious well after the outcome is known. Nevertheless as the triangle unfolds there will be definite time and price relationships formed between the legs either directly or via alternate wave relationships.



## Bullish Consensus

Perhaps the most important consideration of Elliott Wave is how it takes the bullish consensus into account as a trend indicator.

Each type of wave formation holds a character all of its own.

Nevertheless I have noted in recent years, the patterns are becoming more complex due to the speed of communication, and the sophistication of analysis techniques aided by the computer power now available.

With todays computer power, volumes of trade are possible that were never experienced in Elliotts day. That is why I think the explosive moves generated by an overbalance of buyers and sellers are accomodated quickly and result in significant reversals of trend intra-day.

## My Summary of Elliott Wave Strong Points

1. Wave 4's normally terminate in the area of the 4th wave of lesser degree.

2. Wave 4's generally retrace 38.2% of prior expansions.

3. Wave 3's are usually the longest and strongest waves, but never the shortest.

4. Wave 3's nearly always terminate with overbought or oversold trend indicator readings.

5. Alternation between corrective waves will be a guide to the position of the market.

6. Time and Price within future trends will be working out ratio relationships to trends that preceded them.

7. One of Elliott's main points was that bear markets endured or retraced 0.618 of the time or price of the preceding bull trend. This was an important observation considering the tools Elliott had to work with at the time.

# 12

# Forecasting Future Dates for Change in Trend

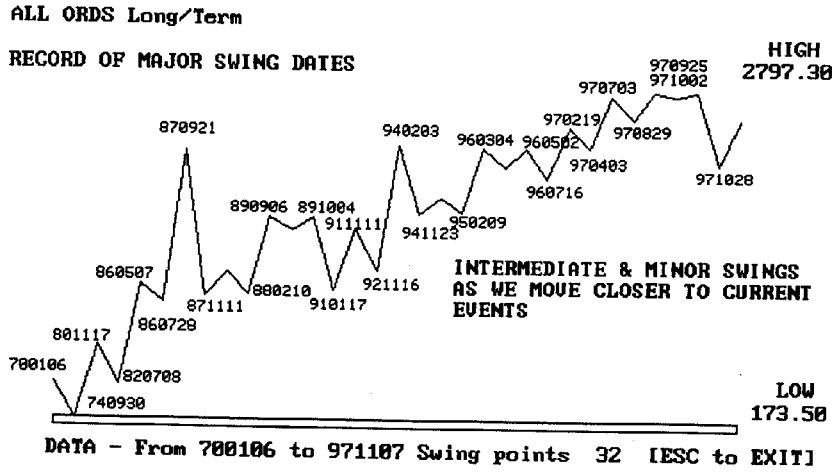
To begin with, I will repeat what I said in the TIME MEASURING TECHNIQUES chapter. The future proportional TIME CYCLE relationships between market trends (market highs to lows / and or / lows to highs / or lows to lows / or highs to highs) will relate as they have in the past, for the future is just a repetition of the past.

W.D. Gann has been quoted as saying, "There is nothing new under the Sun."

**Relationships of time elapsed in bull and bear swings will form in one of 3 ways:-**

1. **Alternating time cycles.**
2. **Direct time cycles.**
3. **Internal time cycles.**

If you are starting from scratch you will have to make a study of the market you are going to forecast and prepare a swing file of MAJOR, INTERMEDIATE and recent Minor degree swings. I call this an optimised SWING FILE.



## The Random Approach

The random approach is to project multiples and divisions of all major cycles into the future, beginning from the end of the projected cycle. We then look for clusters of dates where conjunctions of cycles meet.

The CycleTrader has a time projection module which allows me to prepare time cycle projections. Either in calendar days or solar degrees, I then sort the results into chronological date order reports.

The only problem with this approach, is that, the more cycles you project the more information you add to the analysis. You can end up with a random calculation falling on just about every day of the year.

INFORMATION REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1997 B.T.GILMORE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| TIME CYCLE | 6467 DAYS | 700106 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 4739 DAYS | 740930 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 2499 DAYS | 801117 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1901 DAYS | 820708 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 502 DAYS | 860507 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 420 DAYS | 860728 - 870921 |
| TIME CYCLE | 6518 DAYS | 700106 - 871111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 4790 DAYS | 740930 - 871111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 2550 DAYS | 801117 - 871111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1952 DAYS | 820708 - 871111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 5455 DAYS | 740930 - 890906 |
| TIME CYCLE | 3215 DAYS | 801117 - 890906 |
| TIME CYCLE | 2617 DAYS | 820708 - 890906 |
| TIME CYCLE | 716 DAYS | 870921 - 890906 |
| TIME CYCLE | 665 DAYS | 871111 - 890906 |
| TIME CYCLE | 3115 DAYS | 820708 - 910117 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1163 DAYS | 871111 - 910117 |
| TIME CYCLE | 498 DAYS | 890906 - 910117 |
| TIME CYCLE | 470 DAYS | 891004 - 910117 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1512 DAYS | 870921 - 911111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1461 DAYS | 871111 - 911111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 796 DAYS | 890906 - 911111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 768 DAYS | 891004 - 911111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 298 DAYS | 910117 - 911111 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1883 DAYS | 870921 - 921116 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1832 DAYS | 871111 - 921116 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1167 DAYS | 890906 - 921116 |
| TIME CYCLE | 1139 DAYS | 891004 - 921116 |
| TIME CYCLE | 669 DAYS | 910117 - 921116 |
| TIME CYCLE | 371 DAYS | 911111 - 921116 |

EXAMPLE OF RANDOM CYCLE PROJECTION TECHNIQUES

To illustrate the random approach I have taken 30 major cycles between 1970 and 1992. The projections are in calendar days, all the ratios from chapter 1 are used.

I have produced a report for the year 1994 to show the results.

TIME CYCLE REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1997 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term

Major Direct Time Projections

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 Jan 1994 | 0.354 | 413.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 3 Jan 1994 | 0.618 | 413.0 | 910117 - | 921116 | 669 | DAYS |
| 15 Jan 1994 | 1.000 | 796.0 | 890906 - | 911111 | 796 | DAYS |
| 22 Jan 1994 | 0.236 | 432.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 23 Jan 1994 | 2.236 | 1600.0 | 870921 - | 890906 | 716 | DAYS |
| 23 Jan 1994 | 0.354 | 1102.0 | 820708 - | 910117 | 3115 | DAYS |
| 25 Jan 1994 | 0.382 | 435.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 30 Jan 1994 | 0.500 | 1607.0 | 801117 - | 890906 | 3215 | DAYS |
| 3 Feb 1994 | 2.236 | 1113.0 | 890906 - | 910117 | 498 | DAYS |
| 3 Feb 1994 | 0.236 | 444.0 | 870921 - | 921116 | 1883 | DAYS |
| 4 Feb 1994 | 0.382 | 445.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 5 Feb 1994 | 0.667 | 446.0 | 910117 - | 921116 | 669 | DAYS |
| 9 Feb 1994 | 0.618 | 1617.0 | 820708 - | 890906 | 2617 | DAYS |
| 17 Feb 1994 | 0.250 | 458.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 17 Feb 1994 | 1.236 | 458.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 25 Feb 1994 | 1.236 | 2349.0 | 820708 - | 870921 | 1901 | DAYS |
| 1 Mar 1994 | 0.250 | 470.0 | 870921 - | 921116 | 1883 | DAYS |

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 Mar 1994 | 0.577 | 842.0 | 871111 - | 911111 | 1461 | DAYS |
| 2 Mar 1994 | 2.828 | 842.0 | 910117 - | 911111 | 298 | DAYS |
| 2 Mar 1994 | 1.272 | 471.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 3 Mar 1994 | 0.707 | 472.0 | 910117 - | 921116 | 669 | DAYS |
| 6 Mar 1994 | 0.354 | 2307.0 | 700106 - | 871111 | 6518 | DAYS |
| 17 Mar 1994 | 0.500 | 2369.0 | 740930 - | 870921 | 4739 | DAYS |
| 25 Mar 1994 | 1.000 | 1163.0 | 871111 - | 910117 | 1163 | DAYS |
| 1 Apr 1994 | 0.577 | 872.0 | 870921 - | 911111 | 1512 | DAYS |
| 9 Apr 1994 | 0.447 | 509.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 20 Apr 1994 | 0.382 | 1189.0 | 820708 - | 910117 | 3115 | DAYS |
| 21 Apr 1994 | 0.447 | 521.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 23 Apr 1994 | 3.000 | 894.0 | 910117 - | 911111 | 298 | DAYS |
| 24 Apr 1994 | 1.414 | 524.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 25 Apr 1994 | 0.786 | 525.0 | 910117 - | 921116 | 669 | DAYS |
| 1 May 1994 | 0.618 | 902.0 | 871111 - | 911111 | 1461 | DAYS |
| 5 May 1994 | 1.272 | 2418.0 | 820708 - | 870921 | 1901 | DAYS |
| 26 May 1994 | 1.500 | 556.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 May 1994 | 2.618 | 1230.0 | 891004 - | 910117 | 470 | DAYS |
| 2 Jun 1994 | 0.500 | 2395.0 | 740930 - | 871111 | 4790 | DAYS |
| 2 Jun 1994 | 0.618 | 934.0 | 870921 - | 911111 | 1512 | DAYS |
| 4 Jun 1994 | 3.142 | 936.0 | 910117 - | 911111 | 298 | DAYS |
| 8 Jun 1994 | 0.500 | 569.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 12 Jun 1994 | 2.618 | 1740.0 | 871111 - | 890906 | 665 | DAYS |
| 17 Jun 1994 | 0.667 | 1745.0 | 820708 - | 890906 | 2617 | DAYS |
| 17 Jun 1994 | 1.236 | 949.0 | 891004 - | 911111 | 768 | DAYS |
| 19 Jun 1994 | 1.236 | 2412.0 | 820708 - | 871111 | 1952 | DAYS |
| 22 Jun 1994 | 0.500 | 583.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 26 Jun 1994 | 0.382 | 2470.0 | 700106 - | 870921 | 6467 | DAYS |
| 9 Jul 1994 | 1.618 | 600.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 12 Jul 1994 | 0.667 | 974.0 | 871111 - | 911111 | 1461 | DAYS |
| 14 Jul 1994 | 1.272 | 976.0 | 891004 - | 911111 | 768 | DAYS |
| 19 Jul 1994 | 0.333 | 610.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 21 Jul 1994 | 1.236 | 983.0 | 890906 - | 911111 | 796 | DAYS |
| 25 Jul 1994 | 1.000 | 2499.0 | 801117 - | 870921 | 2499 | DAYS |

TIME CYCLE REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1997 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term

Direct Major Time Cycles Cont.

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30 Jul 1994 | 3.330 | 992.0 | 910117 - | 911111 | 298 | DAYS |
| 5 Aug 1994 | 5.000 | 2510.0 | 860507 - | 870921 | 502 | DAYS |
| 5 Aug 1994 | 0.333 | 627.0 | 870921 - | 921116 | 1883 | DAYS |
| 12 Aug 1994 | 2.618 | 1303.0 | 890906 - | 910117 | 498 | DAYS |
| 15 Aug 1994 | 0.667 | 1008.0 | 870921 - | 911111 | 1512 | DAYS |
| 19 Aug 1994 | 1.272 | 1012.0 | 890906 - | 911111 | 796 | DAYS |
| 20 Aug 1994 | 1.732 | 642.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 26 Aug 1994 | 0.354 | 648.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 27 Aug 1994 | 0.333 | 1816.0 | 740930 - | 890906 | 5455 | DAYS |
| 28 Aug 1994 | 1.272 | 2482.0 | 820708 - | 871111 | 1952 | DAYS |
| 4 Sep 1994 | 0.382 | 2489.0 | 700106 - | 871111 | 6518 | DAYS |
| 4 Sep 1994 | 0.577 | 657.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 7 Sep 1994 | 2.828 | 1329.0 | 891004 - | 910117 | 470 | DAYS |
| 8 Sep 1994 | 0.707 | 1032.0 | 871111 - | 911111 | 1461 | DAYS |
| 13 Sep 1994 | 0.354 | 666.0 | 870921 - | 921116 | 1883 | DAYS |
| 16 Sep 1994 | 1.000 | 669.0 | 910117 - | 921116 | 669 | DAYS |
| 20 Sep 1994 | 0.577 | 673.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30 Sep 1994 | 0.707 | 1850.0 | 820708 - | 890906 | 2617 | DAYS |
| 5 Oct 1994 | 0.577 | 1855.0 | 801117 - | 890906 | 3215 | DAYS |
| 14 Oct 1994 | 0.707 | 1068.0 | 870921 - | 911111 | 1512 | DAYS |
| 16 Oct 1994 | 0.382 | 699.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 20 Oct 1994 | 0.618 | 703.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 22 Oct 1994 | 1.902 | 705.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 24 Oct 1994 | 2.618 | 1874.0 | 870921 - | 890906 | 716 | DAYS |
| 30 Oct 1994 | 2.828 | 1880.0 | 871111 - | 890906 | 665 | DAYS |
| 31 Oct 1994 | 1.414 | 1085.0 | 891004 - | 911111 | 768 | DAYS |
| 4 Nov 1994 | 1.000 | 2550.0 | 801117 - | 871111 | 2550 | DAYS |
| 5 Nov 1994 | 0.382 | 719.0 | 870921 - | 921116 | 1883 | DAYS |
| 7 Nov 1994 | 0.618 | 721.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 9 Nov 1994 | 0.447 | 1392.0 | 820708 - | 910117 | 3115 | DAYS |
| 25 Nov 1994 | 2.828 | 1408.0 | 890906 - | 910117 | 498 | DAYS |
| 27 Nov 1994 | 3.000 | 1410.0 | 891004 - | 910117 | 470 | DAYS |
| 28 Nov 1994 | 2.000 | 742.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 10 Dec 1994 | 1.414 | 1125.0 | 890906 - | 911111 | 796 | DAYS |

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 Dec 1994 | 0.667 | 759.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 19 Dec 1994 | 2.058 | 763.0 | 911111 - | 921116 | 371 | DAYS |
| 20 Dec 1994 | 0.354 | 1931.0 | 740930 - | 890906 | 5455 | DAYS |
| 24 Dec 1994 | 1.236 | 1437.0 | 871111 - | 910117 | 1163 | DAYS |
| 2 Jan 1995 | 0.786 | 1148.0 | 871111 - | 911111 | 1461 | DAYS |
| 3 Jan 1995 | 0.667 | 778.0 | 890906 - | 921116 | 1167 | DAYS |
| 6 Jan 1995 | 1.500 | 1152.0 | 891004 - | 911111 | 768 | DAYS |
| 30 Jan 1995 | 1.414 | 2688.0 | 820708 - | 870921 | 1901 | DAYS |
| 30 Jan 1995 | 0.707 | 805.0 | 891004 - | 921116 | 1139 | DAYS |
| 1 Feb 1995 | 3.142 | 1476.0 | 891004 - | 910117 | 470 | DAYS |
| 4 Feb 1995 | 1.272 | 1479.0 | 871111 - | 910117 | 1163 | DAYS |
| 11 Feb 1995 | 0.786 | 1188.0 | 870921 - | 911111 | 1512 | DAYS |
| 12 Feb 1995 | 0.447 | 818.0 | 871111 - | 921116 | 1832 | DAYS |
| 13 Feb 1995 | 0.618 | 1986.0 | 801117 - | 890906 | 3215 | DAYS |
| 15 Feb 1995 | 4.000 | 1192.0 | 910117 - | 911111 | 298 | DAYS |
| 17 Feb 1995 | 1.500 | 1194.0 | 890906 - | 911111 | 796 | DAYS |
| 19 Feb 1995 | 3.000 | 1494.0 | 890906 - | 910117 | 498 | DAYS |

press any key

To reduce the confusion created by using so many ratios you could reduce the report to only KEY ratios such as:-

**0.333, 0.382, 0.447, 0.500, 0.577, 0.618, 0.667, 0.707, 1.000, 1.4142, 1.618, 2.000**

**The 1994 high fell on the 3rd February with the bear market low on the 23rd November 1994. A bear market double bottom fell on 9th February 1995.**

The time cycle relationships for the 1994 high and the 1995 low are illustrated in the **TIME ANALYSIS section 4**. You can see how much easier trend changes are to identify, after the event, than with this simple direct wave approach.

**To complete the RANDOM APPROACH, projection tables for ALTERNATE CYCLES are also required.**

If one were forecasting a date for the 1994 high you would need to project ratios of all major expansion cycles from 1974 to 1992 off the 1991 and 1992 low. To forecast the dates of the 1994 and 1995 lows one needs to project ratios of all major declines from the 1994 high.

The only Alternate wave projections falling on the 1994 high were 0.667 of the 871111 - 890906 time from the 1992 low and 1.500 times the 910117 - 911111 time from the 1992 low.

## PROJECTING ALTERNATE BEAR MARKETS from the 1994 high.

| Bear Campaign | | | Days | Degrees |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 700106 | - | 740930 | 1728 | 1701 |
| 801117 | - | 820708 | 598 | 591 |
| 870921 | - | 871111 | 51 | 51 |
| 870921 | - | 880210 | 142 | 143 |
| 890906 | - | 910117 | 498 | 493 |
| 891004 | - | 910117 | 470 | 465 |
| 911111 | - | 921116 | 371 | 366 |

1994 BEAR MARKET TERMINATED on the following times.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 940203 | - | 941123 | 293 | 287 |
| 940203 | - | 950209 | 371 | 366 |

INFORMATION REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1997 B.T.GILMORE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SOLAR TCR | 1701 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 591 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 51 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 143 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 493 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 465 | 940203 |
| SOLAR TCR | 366 | 940203 |

PRIOR BEAR MARKET CYCLES PROJECTED FROM THE 1994 HIGH DATE

TIME CYCLE REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1997 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term — Alternate Bear Market TCR's

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 Nov 1994 | 0.577 | 268.3 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 8 Nov 1994 | 1.902 | 272.0 | 143 - | 940203 | 143 | SOLAR |
| 11 Nov 1994 | 0.750 | 274.5 | 366 - | 940203 | 366 | SOLAR |
| 21 Nov 1994 | 0.577 | 284.5 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 22 Nov 1994 | 2.000 | 286.0 | 143 - | 940203 | 143 | SOLAR |
| 23 Nov 1994 | 0.486 | 287.2 | 591 - | 940203 | 591 | SOLAR |
| 24 Nov 1994 | 0.618 | 287.4 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 24 Nov 1994 | 0.786 | 287.7 | 366 - | 940203 | 366 | SOLAR |
| 30 Nov 1994 | 2.058 | 294.3 | 143 - | 940203 | 143 | SOLAR |
| 2 Dec 1994 | 0.500 | 295.5 | 591 - | 940203 | 591 | SOLAR |
| 2 Dec 1994 | 0.636 | 295.7 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 2 Dec 1994 | 0.809 | 296.1 | 366 - | 940203 | 366 | SOLAR |
| 11 Dec 1994 | 0.618 | 304.7 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 16 Dec 1994 | 0.667 | 310.1 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 19 Dec 1994 | 0.636 | 313.5 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 25 Dec 1994 | 2.236 | 319.8 | 143 - | 940203 | 143 | SOLAR |
| 26 Dec 1994 | 0.875 | 320.3 | 366 - | 940203 | 366 | SOLAR |
| 3 Jan 1995 | 0.667 | 328.8 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 3 Jan 1995 | 0.707 | 328.8 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 15 Jan 1995 | 0.577 | 341.0 | 591 - | 940203 | 591 | SOLAR |
| 23 Jan 1995 | 0.707 | 348.5 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 23 Jan 1995 | 0.750 | 348.8 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 8 Feb 1995 | 0.618 | 365.2 | 591 - | 940203 | 591 | SOLAR |
| 8 Feb 1995 | 0.786 | 365.5 | 465 - | 940203 | 465 | SOLAR |
| 9 Feb 1995 | 1.000 | 366.0 | 366 - | 940203 | 366 | SOLAR |
| 13 Feb 1995 | 0.750 | 369.8 | 493 - | 940203 | 493 | SOLAR |
| 17 Feb 1995 | 2.618 | 374.4 | 143 - | 940203 | 143 | SOLAR |
| 19 Feb 1995 | 0.636 | 375.9 | 591 - | 940203 | 591 | SOLAR |

It wasn't surprising that the 23rd November 1994 was a significant low day. Within a 3 day band Time "squared" 4 prior bear marktets. The important observation is they related on the Geometric Series, 0.486, 0.618 and 0.786. Then the 2.000 to 1 with the 1987-88 time range within a degree.

The 9th February 1995 low formed a similar relationship with 3 prior bear market projections "squaring", 0.618, 0.786 and 1.000.

The power of Elliott's theory, "All waves of similar degree will relate in time amplitude", becomes more of a reality when you witness situations like this.

## The 4 Cycle Wave Projection Approach

If you have not studied past market cycles the best approach to find possible future dates of importance is to follow a systematical approach. Each future reversal of trend should relate to TIME ratios of the time between the past 4 market pivot dates of similar degree.

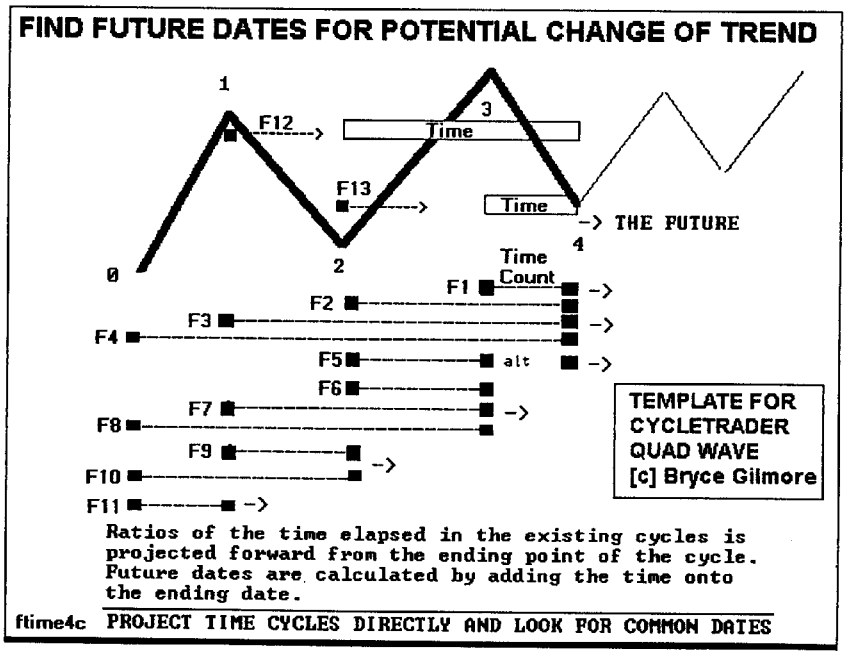
Once you know this is possible you can predict the intersection dates in advance.

The degrees of prior change in trend swings can be reduced to:-

1. Minor
2. Intermediate
3. Major

The way you go about finding the future dates and how strong a harmonic relationship they have to the past is simple.

1. You project ratio combinations of the cycles already formed in the past 4 market trends, into the future.
2. You can then test dates where vibrations are clustering to see how they relate to past cycles of Intermediate and Major degree.

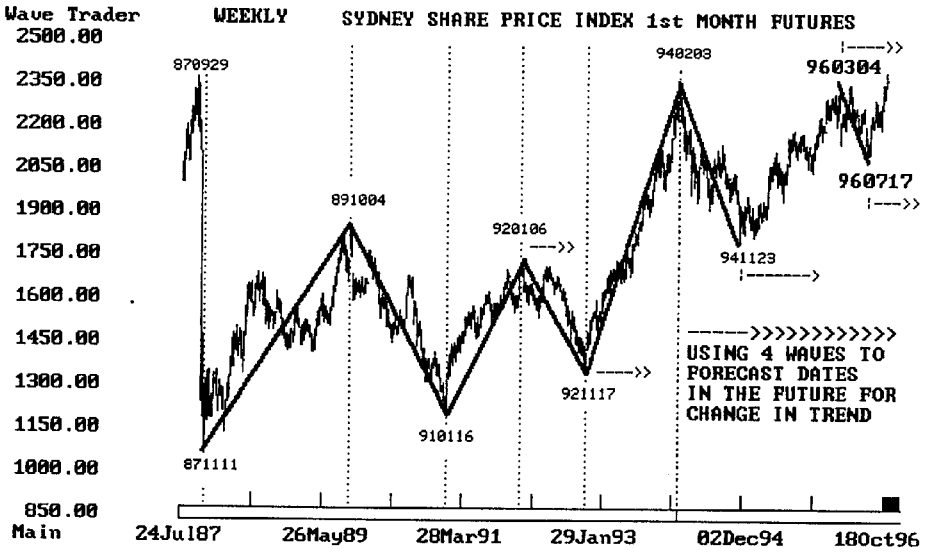


## Combine 4 Swing Cycles with Alternate Wave Projections

If you follow this practice it is impossible for any important change in trend "signal day" to escape your analysis.

Any student of Elliott Wave understands the significance of **ALTERNATE WAVE** relationships. Here you are comparing the time in the prior trend of similar direction to the current trend in progress.

When you project future dates from long term cycles you are better equipped to filter random and non random dates.



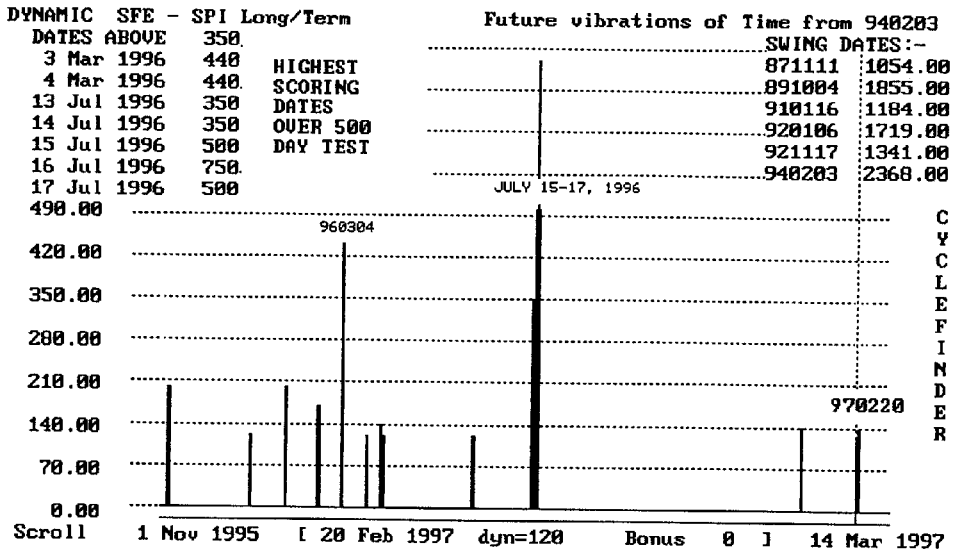

**If you want to predict future dates, follow these examples. You can forget about anything else you have learnt, you don't need it. If you want to identify market change in trend dates as they occur you will need a CycleTrader.**

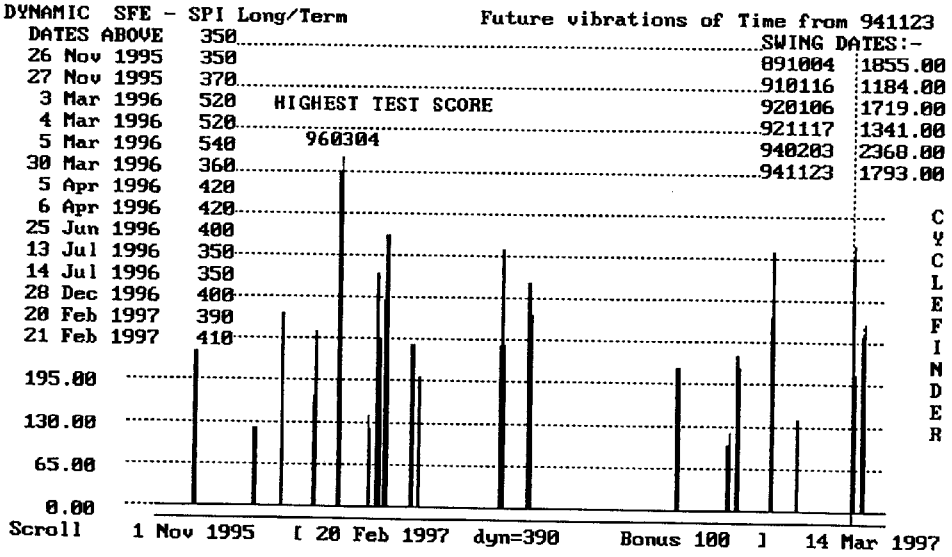
Project TIME CYCLE RATIOS of important cycles from relevant chart points and observe dates where there are clusters of geometric and harmonic relationships.

The future is only a repetition of the past in some geometric form or ratio. Gann says, " there is nothing new under the Sun."

# CycleTrader CYCLEFINDER Reports

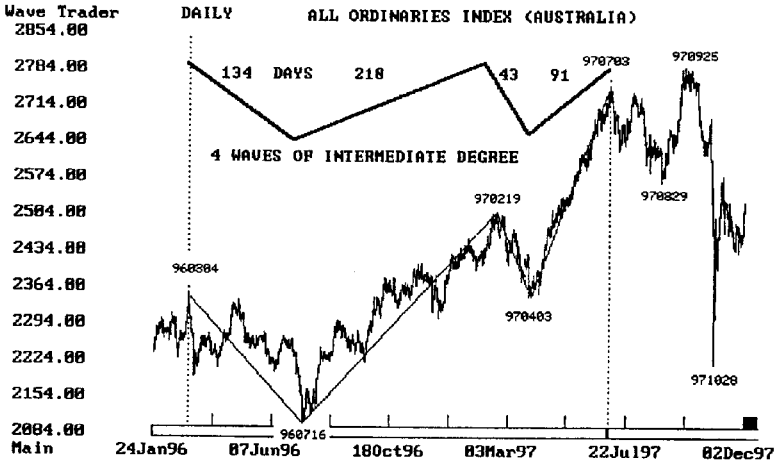
I have automated my template approach to uncover future dates of importance. It takes me about 2 minutes to run these routines over a 500 day test period.



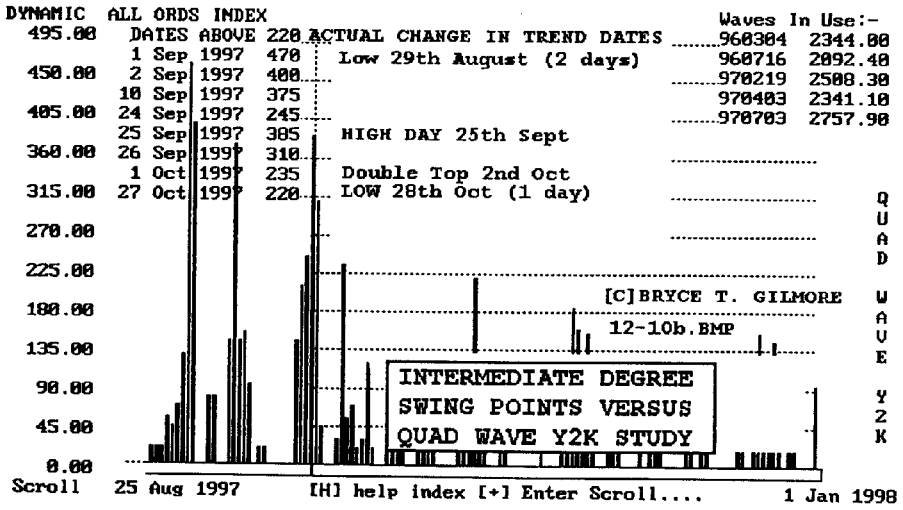



# 4 Waves (Quad Wave) of Intermediate Degree Approach

Future change in trend dates should be evident by the ratio relationships found between the waves of intermediate degree. The Elliott Wave theory states, "All waves of similar degree will relate in TIME AMPLITUDE". My 4 cycle wave approach weights the relationships using a scoring approach.




Here is an example below of the CycleTrader Quad Wave report using the swing points listed in the upper right corner of the display. The forecast dates can be compared with the actual dates of the future swings.



CycleTrader Y2K TIME CYCLE RATIO REPORT [C] 1999 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term TCR REPORT for... 1997 09 25

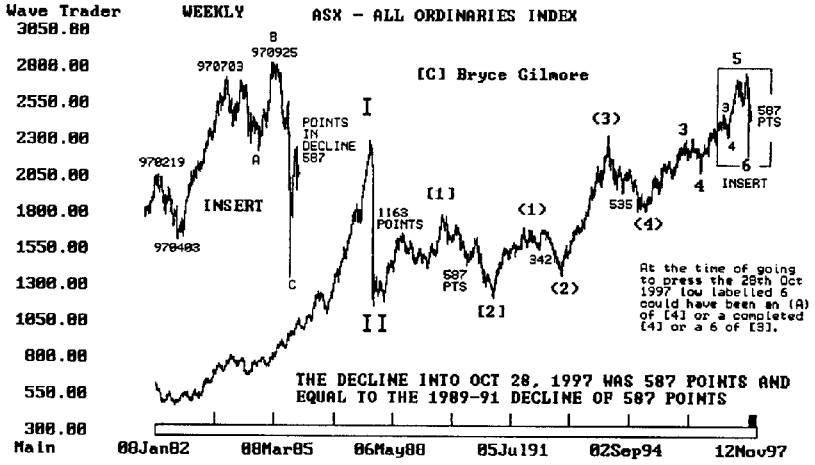
| Strikes | TIME CYCLE DATES | TC | ProJ Days | ratio | TC | ProJ Degrees | ratio |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0.618 | 970219 to 970703 | 134 | 84 | 0.627 | 130.6 | 81.0 | 0.620 |
| 0.236 | 960716 to 970703 | 352 | 84 | 0.239 | 347.4 | 81.0 | 0.233 |
| 0.667 | 960716 to 970403 | 261 | 175 | 0.670 | 259.5 | 168.9 | 0.651 |
| 0.447 | 960304 to 970403 | 395 | 175 | 0.443 | 389.6 | 168.9 | 0.433 |
| 1.000 | 960716 to 970219 | 218 | 218 | 1.000 | 216.7 | 211.6 | 0.977 |
| 0.618 | 960304 to 970219 | 352 | 218 | 0.619 | 346.8 | 211.6 | 0.610 |

Report produced using CycleFinder [Alt X (5-2)] routine and the 4 waves.

## Elliott Wave Counting

The advantage of using an Elliott Wave approach to market swings is that it helps put the TIME CYCLE calculations into a degree of relative importance.

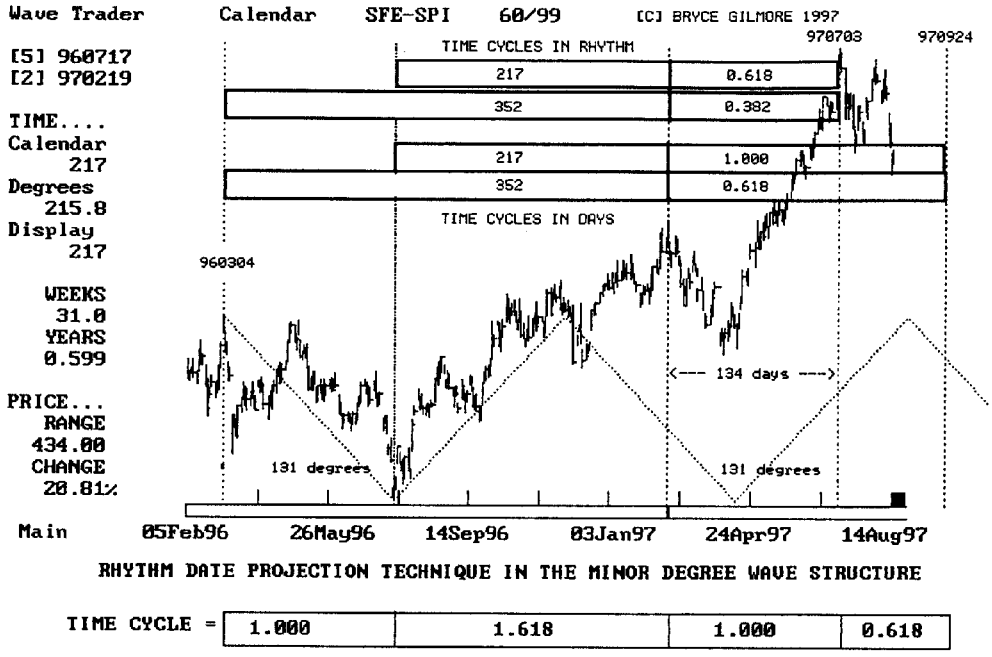
Over long periods of time the MAJOR DEGREE SWINGS stand out quite clearly.




Try and maintain an Elliott Wave count so your future time projection calculations can be rated for importance.

# The Rhythm Approach

A studious analyst can sometimes (not always) predict whether the future date calculation will be a market high or low, depending on the way the past sequences have unfolded.




RHYTHM DATE PROJECTION TECHNIQUE IN THE MINOR DEGREE WAVE STRUCTURE

| TIME CYCLE = | 1.000 | 1.618 | 1.000 | 0.618 |
|---|---|---|---|---|

Situations like the one that exists above, where a rhythm between 3 swing highs and the July 96 swing low, allows for an easy calculation of the next rhythm date.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 960304 - 970219 | = | 352 | 0.382=134 | = 970703 |
| 960717 - 970219 | = | 217 | 0.618=134 | = 970703 |

The continuation of the geometric RHYTHM would give the following dates.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 960304 - 970219 | = | 352 | 0.618=217 | = 970924 |
| 960717 - 970219 | = | 217 | 1.000=217 | = 970924 |

Future RHYTHM dates could be termed "signal" days or "pressure" days.

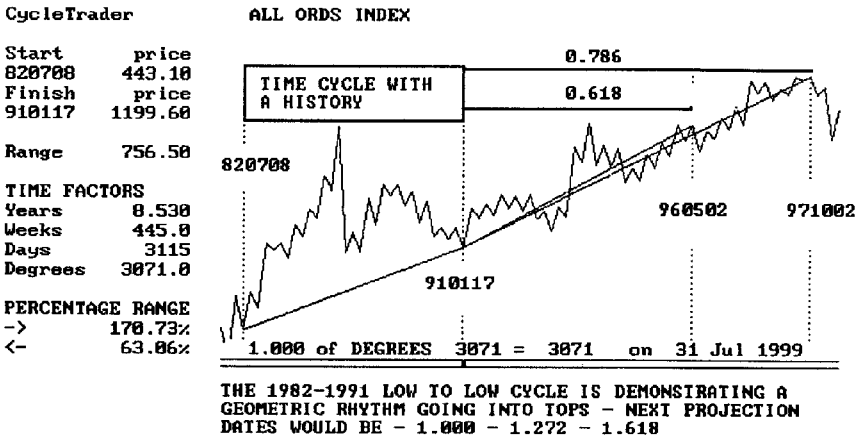
Future progressions can be calculated from any 3 points if you found an arithmetic or harmonic ratio combination signalling a 4th swing high or low.

## Search out reliable time sequences

Each of the following time cycle events are now "written in stone" so to speak. If we use the knowledge gained from the past market movement, the future will be less complicated for us to analyse.

What I am trying to teach you to do, is to find a MAJOR cycle that has a history of working a series of ratios into tops or bottoms. Then use it for your future forecasts.

If you can uncover an existing repetitive pattern in any market it allows you to become an insider. Next time the same pattern repeats, and the market is in a position to change trend, it gives you a massive edge.

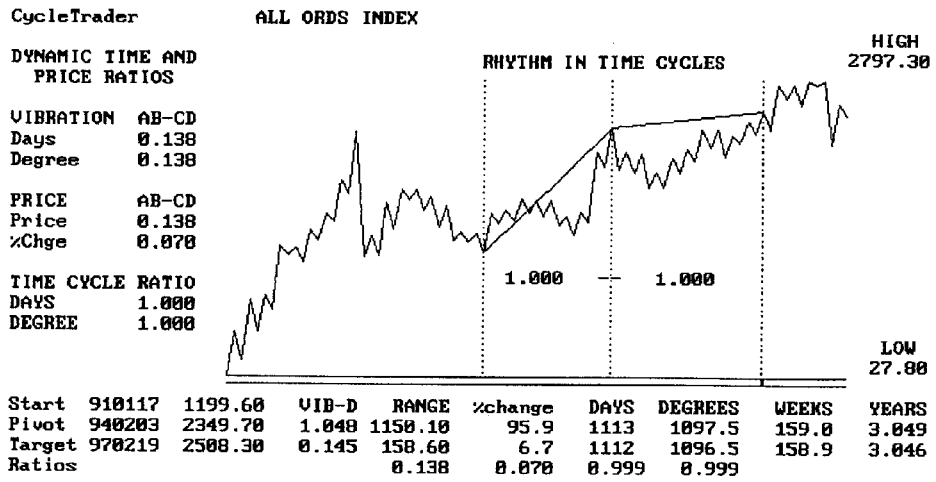



Given that the 1982 to 1991, low to low cycle of 3115 days has synchronised with two subsequent market tops on a projection ratio of 0.618 and 0.786 we can assume that future "pressure points" will fall on ratios of 1.000, 1.272 and 1.618.

A cycle projection of 1.000 will fall on 29th - 31st July 1999, ie., 3115 days from the 1991 low date.
The 1.272 or (3115 * 1.272 = 3962 days from the 1991 low) falls on the 22nd November 2001. The 1.618 ratio projection falls on the 4th November 2004.

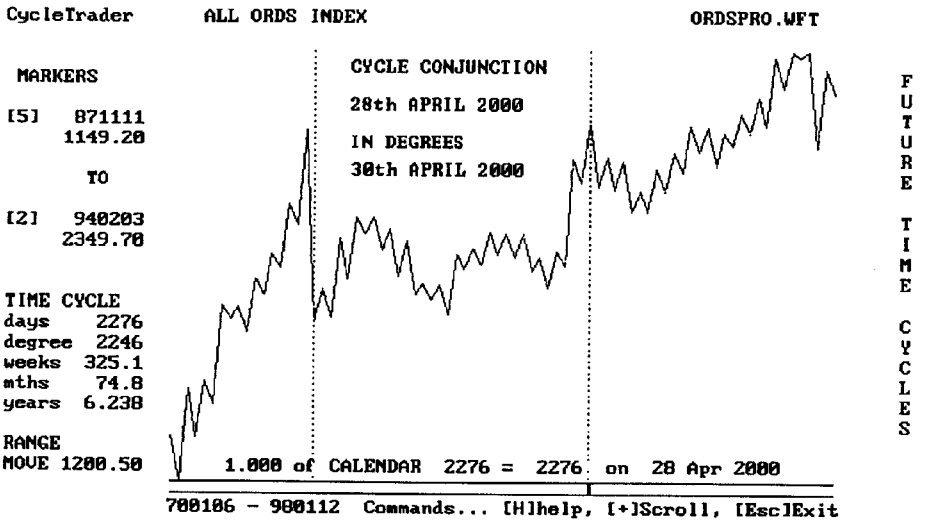
These "pressure dates" (within 5 days - because of the long term nature of the calculations) should be monitored for market "highs", in the case of a low I would still respect the cycle - but wait for a confirmation.

# Dynamic Cycle Times 1.000 to 1.000, 1.618 & 2.000




1.000 to 1.000, 1.618 and 2.000 cycle projections are very important conjunction dates for change of trend. Often you can find a major market pivot that has demonstrated a reliable performance. In this case any future 1.00 to 1.00 Time Cycle Ratio Date with the ASX-All Ordinaries 3rd February, 1994 high date could be an important "signal day".

I am always monitoring dates that cycle at 1.00 to 1.00 off the 1994 high.



## Example of Future Dates using 2 major Pivots

If you work with MAJOR degree pivots you can be prepared DAYS, WEEKS, MONTHS and even YEARS in advance.
We already know, from the market activity, that the 1994 high and low were major reversals of trend basis Elliott Wave. If we were to project ratios of time, off these two pivots and every prior swing of similar degree, we can isolate future dates that may be important.

Using the CycleTrader, we can test the future dates and examine how they fit in with the rest of the market cycles.

TIME CYCLE REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1998 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term Long term cycle dates - 1994 pivots

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11 Jan 1998 | 0.618 | 1438.0 | 870921 - | 940203 | 2327 DAYS |
| 11 Feb 1998 | 0.618 | 1176.0 | 890906 - | 941123 | 1904 DAYS |
| 27 Feb 1998 | 1.618 | 1192.0 | 921116 - | 941123 | 737 DAYS |
| 15 Apr 1998 | 0.500 | 1239.0 | 880210 - | 941123 | 2478 DAYS |
| 30 May 1998 | 0.500 | 1284.0 | 871111 - | 941123 | 2569 DAYS |
| 25 Jun 1998 | 0.500 | 1310.0 | 870921 - | 941123 | 2620 DAYS |
| 3 Jul 1998 | 1.000 | 1611.0 | 890906 - | 940203 | 1611 DAYS |
| 22 Jul 1998 | 2.000 | 1630.0 | 911111 - | 940203 | 815 DAYS |
| 30 Aug 1998 | 1.500 | 1669.0 | 910117 - | 940203 | 1113 DAYS |
| 29 Sep 1998 | 1.000 | 1406.0 | 910117 - | 941123 | 1406 DAYS |
| 6 Dec 1998 | 2.000 | 1474.0 | 921116 - | 941123 | 737 DAYS |
| 8 Jan 1999 | 1.618 | 1800.0 | 910117 - | 940203 | 1113 DAYS |
| 1 Feb 1999 | 0.618 | 1531.0 | 880210 - | 941123 | 2478 DAYS |
| 29 Mar 1999 | 0.618 | 1587.0 | 871111 - | 941123 | 2569 DAYS |
| 30 Apr 1999 | 0.618 | 1619.0 | 870921 - | 941123 | 2620 DAYS |
| 12 Jun 1999 | 1.500 | 1662.0 | 911111 - | 941123 | 1108 DAYS |
| 20 Oct 1999 | 1.618 | 1792.0 | 911111 - | 941123 | 1108 DAYS |
| 18 Nov 1999 | 0.500 | 2114.0 | 820708 - | 940203 | 4228 DAYS |
| 28 Jan 2000 | 1.000 | 2185.0 | 880210 - | 940203 | 2185 DAYS |
| 9 Feb 2000 | 1.000 | 1904.0 | 890906 - | 941123 | 1904 DAYS |
| 9 Mar 2000 | 2.000 | 2226.0 | 910117 - | 940203 | 1113 DAYS |
| 28 Apr 2000 | 1.000 | 2276.0 | 871111 - | 940203 | 2276 DAYS |
| 18 Jun 2000 | 1.000 | 2327.0 | 870921 - | 940203 | 2327 DAYS |
| 1 Sep 2000 | 1.500 | 2109.0 | 910117 - | 941123 | 1406 DAYS |
| 12 Sep 2000 | 0.500 | 2413.0 | 801117 - | 940203 | 4826 DAYS |
| 15 Sep 2000 | 1.500 | 2416.0 | 890906 - | 940203 | 1611 DAYS |
| 17 Dec 2000 | 2.000 | 2216.0 | 911111 - | 941123 | 1108 DAYS |
| 30 Jan 2001 | 0.500 | 2260.0 | 820708 - | 941123 | 4521 DAYS |
| 13 Feb 2001 | 1.618 | 2274.0 | 910117 - | 941123 | 1406 DAYS |
| 24 Mar 2001 | 1.618 | 2606.0 | 890906 - | 940203 | 1611 DAYS |
| 30 Mar 2001 | 0.618 | 2612.0 | 820708 - | 940203 | 4228 DAYS |
| 5 Sep 2001 | 1.000 | 2478.0 | 880210 - | 941123 | 2478 DAYS |
| 25 Nov 2001 | 0.500 | 2559.0 | 801117 - | 941123 | 5119 DAYS |
| 5 Dec 2001 | 1.000 | 2569.0 | 871111 - | 941123 | 2569 DAYS |

## Projecting future dates using existing RHYTHM cycles

Take any 1.000 to 1.000, 0.750, 0.707, 0.667, 0.618, 0.500 existing cycle and check back to see if it has similar rhythm with the past in Arithmetic, Geometric or Harmonic ratios.

If it does then project the next ratio in the family for a rhythm date.

Geometric rhythm:

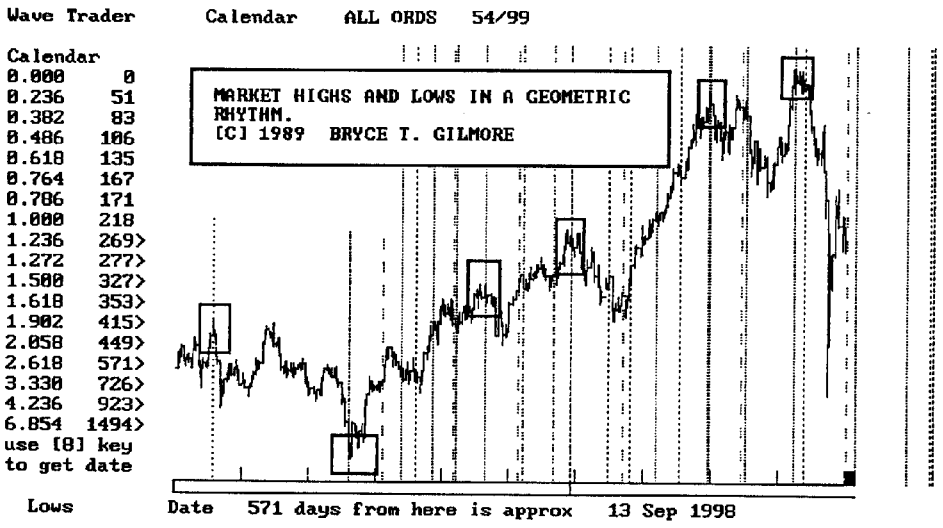
| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.272 | 1.618 | 2.058 | 2.618 | 3.33 | 4.236 |

Harmonic rhythm:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.000 | 1.4142 | 2.000 | 2.828 | 4.000 | 5.66 |

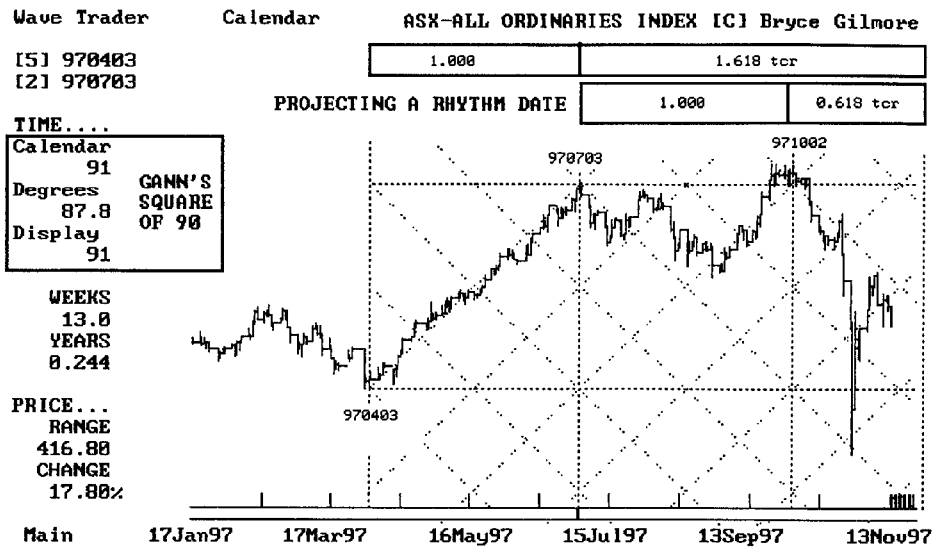
Arithmetic rhythm:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.333 | 1.500 | 1.667 | 1.750 | 2.000 | 3.000 |




Take any 1.000 to 0.618 existing cycle and project future dates using the following ratios.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.000 | 1.618 | 2.618 | 4.236 |




The double top on 971002 came in as the highest high in the Sydney Futures Share Price Index. Both 970925 and 971002 are legitimate cycle pivot highs.

These three swing dates - 970403 low - 970703 high and the 971002 high are square in time, ie., 91 days and 91 days and 87.8 and 87.9 degrees.

**The next RHYTHM "squares" on these individual TIME CYCLES are:-**

| **970403-970703** | **970703-971002** | **970403-971002** |
|---|---|---|
| 91 days / 87.8 deg | 91 days / 87.9 deg | 182 days / 176 deg |
| from 970703 | 971002 | 971002 |
| 1.500 | 0.500 | 0.250 |
| 1.618 | 0.618 | 0.309 |
| **2.000** | **1.000** | **0.500** |
| **2.618** | **1.618** | **0.809** |
| **3.000** | **2.000** | **1.000** |
| **3.236** | **2.236** | **1.118** |
| 4.000 | 3.000 | 1.500 |

On page 12-18 you can see the date projections in degrees, how many students can calculate these dates by hand. Further on in this section there are tables for you to use to calculate future dates. Tables are included for both Calendar and Solar degree time counts.

Identifying RHYTHM and calculating future conjunctions isolates important future dates.

This technique allows one to eliminate the randomness and noise associated with simple ratio projection methods.

TIME CYCLE REPORT - CycleTrader [C] 1998 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS INDEX RHYTHM PIVOTS 970403-970703-971002

| FUTURE TCR DATE | CYCLE RATIO | TIME COUNT | CYCLE RANGE | Start Date | TIME CYCLE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 Feb 1998 | 0.707 | 124.3 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 3 Feb 1998 | 1.414 | 124.3 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 10 Feb 1998 | 0.750 | 131.8 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 10 Feb 1998 | 1.500 | 131.9 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 17 Feb 1998 | 0.786 | 138.2 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 20 Feb 1998 | 2.618 | 230.0 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 21 Feb 1998 | 0.809 | 142.2 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 21 Feb 1998 | 1.618 | 142.3 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 25 Feb 1998 | 1.667 | 146.6 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 3 Mar 1998 | 1.732 | 152.3 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 4 Mar 1998 | 1.750 | 153.9 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 10 Mar 1998 | 2.828 | 248.4 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 25 Mar 1998 | 3.000 | 263.5 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 26 Mar 1998 | 1.000 | 175.8 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 26 Mar 1998 | 2.000 | 175.9 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 31 Mar 1998 | 2.058 | 181.0 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 15 Apr 1998 | 3.236 | 284.3 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 16 Apr 1998 | 1.118 | 196.5 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 16 Apr 1998 | 2.236 | 196.6 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 24 Apr 1998 | 3.330 | 292.5 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 24 Jun 1998 | 4.000 | 351.4 | 970403 - | 970703 | 88 | DEGREES |
| 24 Jun 1998 | 1.500 | 263.6 | 970403 - | 971002 | 176 | DEGREES |
| 24 Jun 1998 | 3.000 | 263.8 | 970703 - | 971002 | 88 | DEGREES |

LOOK FOR THE TRIPLE HITS FOR RHYTHM REPEATING AGAIN AND AGAIN

## TEST THE FUTURE DATES WITH THE BIG PICTURE CYCLES

CycleTrader TIME CYCLE REPORT [C] 1998 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term TCR REPORT for... 19980221

| Ratios | DAYS | DEGREES | TIME CYCLE DATES | DAY TC - DAY PJ | | DEG TC - DEG PJ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.250 | 1.250 | 1.250 | 700106 to 820708 | 4566 | 5707 | 4500.2 | 5626.7 |
| 0.577 | 0.576 | 0.577 | 700106 to 871111 | 6518 | 3755 | 6422.9 | 3704.1 |
| 3.330 | 3.331 | 3.314 | 921116 to 940203 | 444 | 1479 | 440.0 | 1458.3 |

To do this I use a longterm swing chart and the search routine in the CycleFinder module - mark out the range to test with the [5]-[2] markers and invoke the Alt X routine - type in the future date to test and let the computer do the work.

CycleTrader TIME CYCLE REPORT [C] 1998 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term TCR REPORT for... 19980325

| Ratios | DAYS | DEGREES | TIME CYCLE DATES | DAY TC - DAY PJ | | DEG TC - DEG PJ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.828 | 2.829 | 2.830 | 740930 to 801117 | 2240 | 6337 | 2208.3 | 6249.3 |
| 0.707 | 0.707 | 0.707 | 801117 to 910117 | 3713 | 2624 | 3661.6 | 2587.7 |
| 0.447 | 0.446 | 0.447 | 801117 to 921116 | 4382 | 1955 | 4319.1 | 1930.2 |

CycleTrader TIME CYCLE REPORT [C] 1998 B.T. GILMORE

ALL ORDS Long/Term TCR REPORT for... 19980416

| Ratios | DAYS | DEGREES | TIME CYCLE DATES | DAY TC - DAY PJ | | DEG TC - DEG PJ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0.577 | 0.576 | 0.577 | 740930 to 890906 | 5455 | 3144 | 5376.9 | 3102.4 |
| 2.058 | 2.059 | 2.059 | 801117 to 860728 | 2079 | 4280 | 2049.8 | 4221.2 |
| 1.618 | 1.619 | 1.619 | 860728 to 910117 | 1634 | 2646 | 1611.8 | 2609.4 |
| 0.250 | 0.250 | 0.250 | 870921 to 960304 | 3087 | 773 | 3046.2 | 762.1 |
| 0.486 | 0.486 | 0.488 | 871130 to 941123 | 2550 | 1240 | 2513.2 | 1225.3 |
| 0.500 | 0.500 | 0.502 | 880210 to 941123 | 2478 | 1240 | 2440.0 | 1225.3 |
| 1.118 | 1.119 | 1.122 | 911111 to 941123 | 1108 | 1240 | 1092.3 | 1225.3 |
| 0.236 | 0.236 | 0.236 | 921116 to 970403 | 1599 | 378 | 1579.3 | 372.5 |
| 4.236 | 4.232 | 4.276 | 940203 to 941123 | 293 | 1240 | 286.6 | 1225.3 |
| 0.447 | 0.442 | 0.452 | 960716 to 971002 | 443 | 196 | 435.3 | 196.8 |
| 0.875 | 0.871 | 0.900 | 970219 to 971002 | 225 | 196 | 218.6 | 196.8 |
| 1.118 | 1.077 | 1.120 | 970403 to 971002 | 182 | 196 | 175.8 | 196.8 |

If you follow my examples you will be able to forecast future dates where market cycles conjunct and change in trend is possible. If you do your work properly you should be able to isolate at least 2 days each month where a reversal of trend is possible. When you get close to the dates the market action will tell you how important they are going to be.

**One word of warning for traders I need to stress is:-**
Just because the cycles are conjunct does not in itself mean there will definitely be a change in trend, the daily patterns will give the hint. There have been many times I expected to see a change in trend and it did not eventuate. You can use that to your advantage just the same. If a change in trend does not occur within 1 trading day of your strong conjunctions stay with the prevailing trend for the cycles are extending.

**Note to software developers:-**
These methodologies are my own and are subject to my copyright - the CycleTrader is the only software capable of, and approved for use of these copyright methodologies. Any infringements of my copyrights will be subject to litigation. My personal research and development of the time cycle relationships present in tradable markets has been on record since 1986.

## Counting time by degrees

It is very important to monitor time counts and time cycle relationships in both CALENDAR days and SOLAR degrees.

This table will make it easy for you to COUNT time by degrees.

**NOTE:**
You will have to make an allowance when you are in a leap year for the 29th February.

**EXAMPLE 1.**
**Time between two dates in the same year:**
April 3rd to July 3rd

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| July 3rd | = | 182 |
| April 3rd | = | 94 |
| Difference | = | 88 degrees |

**EXAMPLE 2.**
**Finding a future date in the same year:**
February 19th plus 144 degrees

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| February 19th | = | 51 | | |
| | = | 51+144 | = | 195 |
| July 17th | = | 195 | | |

**EXAMPLE 3.**
**Finding a future date in another year:**
July 3rd plus 216 degrees

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| July 3rd | = | 182 | | |
| | = | 182+216 | = | 398 |
| over 360 | = | 398-360 | = | 38 in the next year |
| February 6th | = | 38 | | |

**EXAMPLE 4.**
**Counting degrees between 21st September 1987 and 3rd February 1994**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| September 21st = 259 | December 31st = 360 | 360-259 = | 101 |
| 1988-1993 | 6 years by 360 | 360 x 6 = | 2160 |
| February 3rd = 35 | add 35 | | 35 |
| **Total Degrees between 21/9/87 and 3/2/94 is.....** | | | **2296** |

# SOLAR DEGREE TABLE

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01-Jan | 1 | 01-Mar | 61 | 01-May | 121 | 01-Jul | 180 | 01-Sep | 239 | 01-Nov | 300 |
| 02-Jan | 2 | 02-Mar | 62 | 02-May | 122 | 02-Jul | 181 | 02-Sep | 240 | 02-Nov | 301 |
| 03-Jan | 3 | 03-Mar | 63 | 03-May | 123 | 03-Jul | 182 | 03-Sep | 241 | 03-Nov | 302 |
| 04-Jan | 4 | 04-Mar | 64 | 04-May | 124 | 04-Jul | 183 | 04-Sep | 242 | 04-Nov | 303 |
| 05-Jan | 5 | 05-Mar | 65 | 05-May | 125 | 05-Jul | 184 | 05-Sep | 243 | 05-Nov | 304 |
| 06-Jan | 6 | 06-Mar | 66 | 06-May | 126 | 06-Jul | 185 | 06-Sep | 244 | 06-Nov | 305 |
| 07-Jan | 7 | 07-Mar | 67 | 07-May | 127 | 07-Jul | 186 | 07-Sep | 245 | 07-Nov | 306 |
| 08-Jan | 8 | 08-Mar | 68 | 08-May | 128 | 08-Jul | 186 | 08-Sep | 246 | 08-Nov | 307 |
| 09-Jan | 9 | 09-Mar | 69 | 09-May | 129 | 09-Jul | 187 | 09-Sep | 247 | 09-Nov | 308 |
| 10-Jan | 10 | 10-Mar | 70 | 10-May | 130 | 10-Jul | 188 | 10-Sep | 248 | 10-Nov | 309 |
| 11-Jan | 11 | 11-Mar | 71 | 11-May | 131 | 11-Jul | 189 | 11-Sep | 249 | 11-Nov | 310 |
| 12-Jan | 12 | 12-Mar | 72 | 12-May | 132 | 12-Jul | 190 | 12-Sep | 250 | 12-Nov | 311 |
| 13-Jan | 13 | 13-Mar | 73 | 13-May | 133 | 13-Jul | 191 | 13-Sep | 251 | 13-Nov | 312 |
| 14-Jan | 14 | 14-Mar | 74 | 14-May | 134 | 14-Jul | 192 | 14-Sep | 252 | 14-Nov | 313 |
| 15-Jan | 15 | 15-Mar | 75 | 15-May | 135 | 15-Jul | 193 | 15-Sep | 253 | 15-Nov | 314 |
| 16-Jan | 17 | 16-Mar | 76 | 16-May | 135 | 16-Jul | 194 | 16-Sep | 254 | 16-Nov | 315 |
| 17-Jan | 18 | 17-Mar | 77 | 17-May | 136 | 17-Jul | 195 | 17-Sep | 255 | 17-Nov | 316 |
| 18-Jan | 19 | 18-Mar | 78 | 18-May | 137 | 18-Jul | 196 | 18-Sep | 256 | 18-Nov | 317 |
| 19-Jan | 20 | 19-Mar | 79 | 19-May | 138 | 19-Jul | 197 | 19-Sep | 257 | 19-Nov | 318 |
| 20-Jan | 21 | 20-Mar | 80 | 20-May | 139 | 20-Jul | 198 | 20-Sep | 258 | 20-Nov | 319 |
| 21-Jan | 22 | 21-Mar | 81 | 21-May | 140 | 21-Jul | 199 | 21-Sep | 259 | 21-Nov | 320 |
| 22-Jan | 23 | 22-Mar | 82 | 22-May | 141 | 22-Jul | 200 | 22-Sep | 260 | 22-Nov | 321 |
| 23-Jan | 24 | 23-Mar | 83 | 23-May | 142 | 23-Jul | 201 | 23-Sep | 261 | 23-Nov | 322 |
| 24-Jan | 25 | 24-Mar | 84 | 24-May | 143 | 24-Jul | 201 | 24-Sep | 262 | 24-Nov | 323 |
| 25-Jan | 26 | 25-Mar | 85 | 25-May | 144 | 25-Jul | 202 | 25-Sep | 263 | 25-Nov | 324 |
| 26-Jan | 27 | 26-Mar | 86 | 26-May | 145 | 26-Jul | 203 | 26-Sep | 264 | 26-Nov | 325 |
| 27-Jan | 28 | 27-Mar | 87 | 27-May | 146 | 27-Jul | 204 | 27-Sep | 265 | 27-Nov | 326 |
| 28-Jan | 29 | 28-Mar | 88 | 28-May | 147 | 28-Jul | 205 | 28-Sep | 266 | 28-Nov | 327 |
| 29-Jan | 30 | 29-Mar | 89 | 29-May | 148 | 29-Jul | 206 | 29-Sep | 267 | 29-Nov | 328 |
| 30-Jan | 31 | 30-Mar | 90 | 30-May | 149 | 30-Jul | 207 | 30-Sep | 268 | 30-Nov | 329 |
| 31-Jan | 32 | 31-Mar | 91 | 31-May | 150 | 31-Jul | 208 | 01-Oct | 269 | 01-Dec | 330 |
| 01-Feb | 33 | 01-Apr | 92 | 01-Jun | 151 | 01-Aug | 209 | 02-Oct | 270 | 02-Dec | 331 |
| 02-Feb | 34 | 02-Apr | 93 | 02-Jun | 152 | 02-Aug | 210 | 03-Oct | 271 | 03-Dec | 332 |
| 03-Feb | 35 | 03-Apr | 94 | 03-Jun | 153 | 03-Aug | 211 | 04-Oct | 272 | 04-Dec | 333 |
| 04-Feb | 36 | 04-Apr | 95 | 04-Jun | 154 | 04-Aug | 212 | 05-Oct | 273 | 05-Dec | 334 |
| 05-Feb | 37 | 05-Apr | 96 | 05-Jun | 155 | 05-Aug | 213 | 06-Oct | 274 | 06-Dec | 335 |
| 06-Feb | 38 | 06-Apr | 97 | 06-Jun | 156 | 06-Aug | 214 | 07-Oct | 275 | 07-Dec | 336 |
| 07-Feb | 39 | 07-Apr | 98 | 07-Jun | 157 | 07-Aug | 215 | 08-Oct | 276 | 08-Dec | 337 |
| 08-Feb | 40 | 08-Apr | 99 | 08-Jun | 158 | 08-Aug | 216 | 09-Oct | 277 | 09-Dec | 338 |
| 09-Feb | 41 | 09-Apr | 100 | 09-Jun | 159 | 09-Aug | 217 | 10-Oct | 278 | 10-Dec | 339 |
| 10-Feb | 42 | 10-Apr | 101 | 10-Jun | 160 | 10-Aug | 218 | 11-Oct | 279 | 11-Dec | 340 |
| 11-Feb | 43 | 11-Apr | 102 | 11-Jun | 161 | 11-Aug | 219 | 12-Oct | 280 | 12-Dec | 341 |
| 12-Feb | 44 | 12-Apr | 103 | 12-Jun | 162 | 12-Aug | 220 | 13-Oct | 281 | 13-Dec | 342 |
| 13-Feb | 45 | 13-Apr | 104 | 13-Jun | 163 | 13-Aug | 221 | 14-Oct | 282 | 14-Dec | 343 |
| 14-Feb | 46 | 14-Apr | 105 | 14-Jun | 164 | 14-Aug | 222 | 15-Oct | 283 | 15-Dec | 344 |
| 15-Feb | 47 | 15-Apr | 106 | 15-Jun | 164 | 15-Aug | 223 | 16-Oct | 284 | 16-Dec | 345 |
| 16-Feb | 48 | 16-Apr | 106 | 16-Jun | 165 | 16-Aug | 223 | 17-Oct | 285 | 17-Dec | 346 |
| 17-Feb | 49 | 17-Apr | 107 | 17-Jun | 166 | 17-Aug | 224 | 18-Oct | 286 | 18-Dec | 347 |
| 18-Feb | 50 | 18-Apr | 108 | 18-Jun | 167 | 18-Aug | 225 | 19-Oct | 287 | 19-Dec | 348 |
| 19-Feb | 51 | 19-Apr | 109 | 19-Jun | 168 | 19-Aug | 226 | 20-Oct | 288 | 20-Dec | 349 |
| 20-Feb | 52 | 20-Apr | 110 | 20-Jun | 169 | 20-Aug | 227 | 21-Oct | 289 | 21-Dec | 350 |
| 21-Feb | 53 | 21-Apr | 111 | 21-Jun | 170 | 21-Aug | 228 | 22-Oct | 290 | 22-Dec | 351 |
| 22-Feb | 54 | 22-Apr | 112 | 22-Jun | 171 | 22-Aug | 229 | 23-Oct | 291 | 23-Dec | 352 |
| 23-Feb | 55 | 23-Apr | 113 | 23-Jun | 172 | 23-Aug | 230 | 24-Oct | 292 | 24-Dec | 353 |
| 24-Feb | 56 | 24-Apr | 114 | 24-Jun | 173 | 24-Aug | 231 | 25-Oct | 293 | 25-Dec | 354 |
| 25-Feb | 57 | 25-Apr | 115 | 25-Jun | 174 | 25-Aug | 232 | 26-Oct | 294 | 26-Dec | 355 |
| 26-Feb | 58 | 26-Apr | 116 | 26-Jun | 175 | 26-Aug | 233 | 27-Oct | 295 | 27-Dec | 356 |
| 27-Feb | 59 | 27-Apr | 117 | 27-Jun | 176 | 27-Aug | 234 | 28-Oct | 296 | 28-Dec | 357 |
| 28-Feb | 60 | 28-Apr | 118 | 28-Jun | 177 | 28-Aug | 235 | 29-Oct | 297 | 29-Dec | 358 |
| | | 29-Apr | 119 | 29-Jun | 178 | 29-Aug | 236 | 30-Oct | 298 | 30-Dec | 359 |
| | | 30-Apr | 120 | 30-Jun | 179 | 30-Aug | 237 | 31-Oct | 299 | 31-Dec | 360 |
| | | | | | | 31-Aug | 238 | | | | |

## Counting Calendar Days

This table will make it easy for you to COUNT time in calendar days.

**NOTE:**
You will have to make an allowance when you are in a leap year for the 29th February.

**EXAMPLE 1.**
**Time between two dates in the same year:**
April 3rd to July 3rd

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| July 3rd | = | 184 |
| April 3rd | = | 93 |
| Difference | = | 91 days |

**EXAMPLE 2.**
**Finding a future date in the same year:**
February 19th plus 144 days

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| February 19th | = | 50 | | |
| | = | 50+144 | = | 194 |
| July 13th | = | 194 | | |

**EXAMPLE 3.**
**Finding a future date in another year:**
July 3rd plus 216 days

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| July 3rd | = | 184 | | |
| | = | 184+216 | = | 400 |
| over 365 | = | 400-365 | = | 35 in the next year |
| February 4th | = | 35 | | |

**EXAMPLE 4.**
**Counting days between 21st September 1987 and 3rd February 1994**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| September 21st = 264 | December 31st = 365 | 365-264 = | 101 |
| 1988-1993 | 6 years by 365 | 365 x 6 = | 2190 |
| Leap years | 1988 & 1992 | | 2 |
| February 3rd = 34 | add 34 | | 34 |
| **Total Days between 21/9/87 and 3/2/94 is.....** | | | **2327** |

# CALENDAR DAY COUNTER

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01-Jan | 1 | 01-Mar | 60 | 01-May | 121 | 01-Jul | 182 | 01-Sep | 244 | 01-Nov | 305 |
| 02-Jan | 2 | 02-Mar | 61 | 02-May | 122 | 02-Jul | 183 | 02-Sep | 245 | 02-Nov | 306 |
| 03-Jan | 3 | 03-Mar | 62 | 03-May | 123 | 03-Jul | 184 | 03-Sep | 246 | 03-Nov | 307 |
| 04-Jan | 4 | 04-Mar | 63 | 04-May | 124 | 04-Jul | 185 | 04-Sep | 247 | 04-Nov | 308 |
| 05-Jan | 5 | 05-Mar | 64 | 05-May | 125 | 05-Jul | 186 | 05-Sep | 248 | 05-Nov | 309 |
| 06-Jan | 6 | 06-Mar | 65 | 06-May | 126 | 06-Jul | 187 | 06-Sep | 249 | 06-Nov | 310 |
| 07-Jan | 7 | 07-Mar | 66 | 07-May | 127 | 07-Jul | 188 | 07-Sep | 250 | 07-Nov | 311 |
| 08-Jan | 8 | 08-Mar | 67 | 08-May | 128 | 08-Jul | 189 | 08-Sep | 251 | 08-Nov | 312 |
| 09-Jan | 9 | 09-Mar | 68 | 09-May | 129 | 09-Jul | 190 | 09-Sep | 252 | 09-Nov | 313 |
| 10-Jan | 10 | 10-Mar | 69 | 10-May | 130 | 10-Jul | 191 | 10-Sep | 253 | 10-Nov | 314 |
| 11-Jan | 11 | 11-Mar | 70 | 11-May | 131 | 11-Jul | 192 | 11-Sep | 254 | 11-Nov | 315 |
| 12-Jan | 12 | 12-Mar | 71 | 12-May | 132 | 12-Jul | 193 | 12-Sep | 255 | 12-Nov | 316 |
| 13-Jan | 13 | 13-Mar | 72 | 13-May | 133 | 13-Jul | 194 | 13-Sep | 256 | 13-Nov | 317 |
| 14-Jan | 14 | 14-Mar | 73 | 14-May | 134 | 14-Jul | 195 | 14-Sep | 257 | 14-Nov | 318 |
| 15-Jan | 15 | 15-Mar | 74 | 15-May | 135 | 15-Jul | 196 | 15-Sep | 258 | 15-Nov | 319 |
| 16-Jan | 16 | 16-Mar | 75 | 16-May | 136 | 16-Jul | 197 | 16-Sep | 259 | 16-Nov | 320 |
| 17-Jan | 17 | 17-Mar | 76 | 17-May | 137 | 17-Jul | 198 | 17-Sep | 260 | 17-Nov | 321 |
| 18-Jan | 18 | 18-Mar | 77 | 18-May | 138 | 18-Jul | 199 | 18-Sep | 261 | 18-Nov | 322 |
| 19-Jan | 19 | 19-Mar | 78 | 19-May | 139 | 19-Jul | 200 | 19-Sep | 262 | 19-Nov | 323 |
| 20-Jan | 20 | 20-Mar | 79 | 20-May | 140 | 20-Jul | 201 | 20-Sep | 263 | 20-Nov | 324 |
| 21-Jan | 21 | 21-Mar | 80 | 21-May | 141 | 21-Jul | 202 | 21-Sep | 264 | 21-Nov | 325 |
| 22-Jan | 22 | 22-Mar | 81 | 22-May | 142 | 22-Jul | 203 | 22-Sep | 265 | 22-Nov | 326 |
| 23-Jan | 23 | 23-Mar | 82 | 23-May | 143 | 23-Jul | 204 | 23-Sep | 266 | 23-Nov | 327 |
| 24-Jan | 24 | 24-Mar | 83 | 24-May | 144 | 24-Jul | 205 | 24-Sep | 267 | 24-Nov | 328 |
| 25-Jan | 25 | 25-Mar | 84 | 25-May | 145 | 25-Jul | 206 | 25-Sep | 268 | 25-Nov | 329 |
| 26-Jan | 26 | 26-Mar | 85 | 26-May | 146 | 26-Jul | 207 | 26-Sep | 269 | 26-Nov | 330 |
| 27-Jan | 27 | 27-Mar | 86 | 27-May | 147 | 27-Jul | 208 | 27-Sep | 270 | 27-Nov | 331 |
| 28-Jan | 28 | 28-Mar | 87 | 28-May | 148 | 28-Jul | 209 | 28-Sep | 271 | 28-Nov | 332 |
| 29-Jan | 29 | 29-Mar | 88 | 29-May | 149 | 29-Jul | 210 | 29-Sep | 272 | 29-Nov | 333 |
| 30-Jan | 30 | 30-Mar | 89 | 30-May | 150 | 30-Jul | 211 | 30-Sep | 273 | 30-Nov | 334 |
| 31-Jan | 31 | 31-Mar | 90 | 31-May | 151 | 31-Jul | 212 | 01-Oct | 274 | 01-Dec | 335 |
| 01-Feb | 32 | 01-Apr | 91 | 01-Jun | 152 | 01-Aug | 213 | 02-Oct | 275 | 02-Dec | 336 |
| 02-Feb | 33 | 02-Apr | 92 | 02-Jun | 153 | 02-Aug | 214 | 03-Oct | 276 | 03-Dec | 337 |
| 03-Feb | 34 | 03-Apr | 93 | 03-Jun | 154 | 03-Aug | 215 | 04-Oct | 277 | 04-Dec | 338 |
| 04-Feb | 35 | 04-Apr | 94 | 04-Jun | 155 | 04-Aug | 216 | 05-Oct | 278 | 05-Dec | 339 |
| 05-Feb | 36 | 05-Apr | 95 | 05-Jun | 156 | 05-Aug | 217 | 06-Oct | 279 | 06-Dec | 340 |
| 06-Feb | 37 | 06-Apr | 96 | 06-Jun | 157 | 06-Aug | 218 | 07-Oct | 280 | 07-Dec | 341 |
| 07-Feb | 38 | 07-Apr | 97 | 07-Jun | 158 | 07-Aug | 219 | 08-Oct | 281 | 08-Dec | 342 |
| 08-Feb | 39 | 08-Apr | 98 | 08-Jun | 159 | 08-Aug | 220 | 09-Oct | 282 | 09-Dec | 343 |
| 09-Feb | 40 | 09-Apr | 99 | 09-Jun | 160 | 09-Aug | 221 | 10-Oct | 283 | 10-Dec | 344 |
| 10-Feb | 41 | 10-Apr | 100 | 10-Jun | 161 | 10-Aug | 222 | 11-Oct | 284 | 11-Dec | 345 |
| 11-Feb | 42 | 11-Apr | 101 | 11-Jun | 162 | 11-Aug | 223 | 12-Oct | 285 | 12-Dec | 346 |
| 12-Feb | 43 | 12-Apr | 102 | 12-Jun | 163 | 12-Aug | 224 | 13-Oct | 286 | 13-Dec | 347 |
| 13-Feb | 44 | 13-Apr | 103 | 13-Jun | 164 | 13-Aug | 225 | 14-Oct | 287 | 14-Dec | 348 |
| 14-Feb | 45 | 14-Apr | 104 | 14-Jun | 165 | 14-Aug | 226 | 15-Oct | 288 | 15-Dec | 349 |
| 15-Feb | 46 | 15-Apr | 105 | 15-Jun | 166 | 15-Aug | 227 | 16-Oct | 289 | 16-Dec | 350 |
| 16-Feb | 47 | 16-Apr | 106 | 16-Jun | 167 | 16-Aug | 228 | 17-Oct | 290 | 17-Dec | 351 |
| 17-Feb | 48 | 17-Apr | 107 | 17-Jun | 168 | 17-Aug | 229 | 18-Oct | 291 | 18-Dec | 352 |
| 18-Feb | 49 | 18-Apr | 108 | 18-Jun | 169 | 18-Aug | 230 | 19-Oct | 292 | 19-Dec | 353 |
| 19-Feb | 50 | 19-Apr | 109 | 19-Jun | 170 | 19-Aug | 231 | 20-Oct | 293 | 20-Dec | 354 |
| 20-Feb | 51 | 20-Apr | 110 | 20-Jun | 171 | 20-Aug | 232 | 21-Oct | 294 | 21-Dec | 355 |
| 21-Feb | 52 | 21-Apr | 111 | 21-Jun | 172 | 21-Aug | 233 | 22-Oct | 295 | 22-Dec | 356 |
| 22-Feb | 53 | 22-Apr | 112 | 22-Jun | 173 | 22-Aug | 234 | 23-Oct | 296 | 23-Dec | 357 |
| 23-Feb | 54 | 23-Apr | 113 | 23-Jun | 174 | 23-Aug | 235 | 24-Oct | 297 | 24-Dec | 358 |
| 24-Feb | 55 | 24-Apr | 114 | 24-Jun | 175 | 24-Aug | 236 | 25-Oct | 298 | 25-Dec | 359 |
| 25-Feb | 56 | 25-Apr | 115 | 25-Jun | 176 | 25-Aug | 237 | 26-Oct | 299 | 26-Dec | 360 |
| 26-Feb | 57 | 26-Apr | 116 | 26-Jun | 177 | 26-Aug | 238 | 27-Oct | 300 | 27-Dec | 361 |
| 27-Feb | 58 | 27-Apr | 117 | 27-Jun | 178 | 27-Aug | 239 | 28-Oct | 301 | 28-Dec | 362 |
| 28-Feb | 59 | 28-Apr | 118 | 28-Jun | 179 | 28-Aug | 240 | 29-Oct | 302 | 29-Dec | 363 |
| | | 29-Apr | 119 | 29-Jun | 180 | 29-Aug | 241 | 30-Oct | 303 | 30-Dec | 364 |
| | | 30-Apr | 120 | 30-Jun | 181 | 30-Aug | 242 | 31-Oct | 304 | 31-Dec | 365 |
| | | | | | | 31-Aug | 243 | | | | |

## FUTURE DATES TO MONITOR .....

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 01-Jan | 01-Mar | 01-May | 01-Jul | 01-Sep | 01-Nov |
| 02-Jan | 02-Mar | 02-May | 02-Jul | 02-Sep | 02-Nov |
| **03-Jan** | 03-Mar | 03-May | **03-Jul** | 03-Sep | 03-Nov |
| **04-Jan** | 04-Mar | 04-May | **04-Jul** | 04-Sep | 04-Nov |
| 05-Jan | 05-Mar | 05-May | 05-Jul | 05-Sep | 05-Nov |
| 06-Jan | 06-Mar | 06-May | 06-Jul | 06-Sep | 06-Nov |
| 07-Jan | 07-Mar | 07-May | 07-Jul | 07-Sep | 07-Nov |
| 08-Jan | 08-Mar | 08-May | 08-Jul | 08-Sep | 08-Nov |
| 09-Jan | 09-Mar | 09-May | 09-Jul | 09-Sep | 09-Nov |
| 10-Jan | 10-Mar | 10-May | 10-Jul | 10-Sep | 10-Nov |
| 11-Jan | 11-Mar | 11-May | 11-Jul | 11-Sep | 11-Nov |
| 12-Jan | 12-Mar | 12-May | 12-Jul | 12-Sep | 12-Nov |
| 13-Jan | 13-Mar | 13-May | 13-Jul | 13-Sep | 13-Nov |
| 14-Jan | 14-Mar | 14-May | 14-Jul | 14-Sep | 14-Nov |
| 15-Jan | 15-Mar | 15-May | 15-Jul | 15-Sep | 15-Nov |
| 16-Jan | 16-Mar | 16-May | 16-Jul | 16-Sep | 16-Nov |
| 17-Jan | 17-Mar | 17-May | 17-Jul | 17-Sep | 17-Nov |
| 18-Jan | 18-Mar | 18-May | 18-Jul | 18-Sep | 18-Nov |
| 19-Jan | 19-Mar | 19-May | 19-Jul | 19-Sep | 19-Nov |
| 20-Jan | **20-Mar** | 20-May | 20-Jul | 20-Sep | 20-Nov |
| 21-Jan | **21-Mar** | 21-May | 21-Jul | **21-Sep** | 21-Nov |
| 22-Jan | 22-Mar | 22-May | 22-Jul | **22-Sep** | 22-Nov |
| 23-Jan | 23-Mar | 23-May | 23-Jul | 23-Sep | 23-Nov |
| 24-Jan | 24-Mar | 24-May | 24-Jul | 24-Sep | 24-Nov |
| 25-Jan | 25-Mar | 25-May | 25-Jul | 25-Sep | 25-Nov |
| 26-Jan | 26-Mar | 26-May | 26-Jul | 26-Sep | 26-Nov |
| 27-Jan | 27-Mar | 27-May | 27-Jul | 27-Sep | 27-Nov |
| 28-Jan | 28-Mar | 28-May | 28-Jul | 28-Sep | 28-Nov |
| 29-Jan | 29-Mar | 29-May | 29-Jul | 29-Sep | 29-Nov |
| 30-Jan | 30-Mar | 30-May | 30-Jul | 30-Sep | 30-Nov |
| 31-Jan | 31-Mar | 31-May | 31-Jul | | |
| 01-Feb | 01-Apr | 01-Jun | 01-Aug | 01-Oct | 01-Dec |
| 02-Feb | 02-Apr | 02-Jun | 02-Aug | 02-Oct | 02-Dec |
| 03-Feb | 03-Apr | 03-Jun | 03-Aug | 03-Oct | 03-Dec |
| 04-Feb | 04-Apr | 04-Jun | 04-Aug | 04-Oct | 04-Dec |
| 05-Feb | 05-Apr | 05-Jun | 05-Aug | 05-Oct | 05-Dec |
| 06-Feb | 06-Apr | 06-Jun | 06-Aug | 06-Oct | 06-Dec |
| 07-Feb | 07-Apr | 07-Jun | 07-Aug | 07-Oct | 07-Dec |
| 08-Feb | 08-Apr | 08-Jun | 08-Aug | 08-Oct | 08-Dec |
| 09-Feb | 09-Apr | 09-Jun | 09-Aug | 09-Oct | 09-Dec |
| 10-Feb | 10-Apr | 10-Jun | 10-Aug | 10-Oct | 10-Dec |
| 11-Feb | 11-Apr | 11-Jun | 11-Aug | 11-Oct | 11-Dec |
| 12-Feb | 12-Apr | 12-Jun | 12-Aug | 12-Oct | 12-Dec |
| 13-Feb | 13-Apr | 13-Jun | 13-Aug | 13-Oct | 13-Dec |
| 14-Feb | 14-Apr | 14-Jun | 14-Aug | 14-Oct | 14-Dec |
| 15-Feb | 15-Apr | 15-Jun | 15-Aug | 15-Oct | 15-Dec |
| 16-Feb | 16-Apr | 16-Jun | 16-Aug | 16-Oct | 16-Dec |
| 17-Feb | 17-Apr | 17-Jun | 17-Aug | 17-Oct | 17-Dec |
| 18-Feb | 18-Apr | 18-Jun | 18-Aug | 18-Oct | 18-Dec |
| 19-Feb | 19-Apr | 19-Jun | 19-Aug | 19-Oct | 19-Dec |
| 20-Feb | 20-Apr | 20-Jun | 20-Aug | 20-Oct | 20-Dec |
| 21-Feb | 21-Apr | **21-Jun** | 21-Aug | 21-Oct | **21-Dec** |
| 22-Feb | 22-Apr | **22-Jun** | 22-Aug | 22-Oct | **22-Dec** |
| 23-Feb | 23-Apr | 23-Jun | 23-Aug | 23-Oct | 23-Dec |
| 24-Feb | 24-Apr | 24-Jun | 24-Aug | 24-Oct | 24-Dec |
| 25-Feb | 25-Apr | 25-Jun | 25-Aug | 25-Oct | 25-Dec |
| 26-Feb | 26-Apr | 26-Jun | 26-Aug | 26-Oct | 26-Dec |
| 27-Feb | 27-Apr | 27-Jun | 27-Aug | 27-Oct | 27-Dec |
| 28-Feb | 28-Apr | 28-Jun | 28-Aug | 28-Oct | 28-Dec |
| | 29-Apr | 29-Jun | 29-Aug | 29-Oct | 29-Dec |
| | 30-Apr | 30-Jun | 30-Aug | 30-Oct | 30-Dec |
| | | | 31-Aug | 31-Oct | 31-Dec |

# 13

# Forecasting Future Price Levels For Change in Trend

Section 3, **Price Measuring Techniques** provides the basis for the following techniques.

There are so many ways price highs and lows can relate to each other it makes the mind bogle. Once one begins to make projections of price levels in minor, intermediate and primary degree the possibilities become endless.

What we have to work with is the Elliott Wave and Gann Methodologies applied to waves of similar degree.

The Elliott Wave, Gann and Gilmore procedures we will use are:-
1. Expansions of a prior range.
2. Alternate wave projections.
3. Internal wave projections.

Once all the calculations have been completed you will then have to assess the results to see how they fit logically.

## Let's define the objective:-

**To forecast price resistance levels in a rising market.**

The best way I can illustrate my method is to recount the calculations I made for the Sydney Share Price Index, prior to my talk at the SFE Expo in Melbourne on Monday, May 5th 1997.

**At the Expo I gave a 50 minute talk based on Elliott Wave Principles. I stated in front of 250 odd people I was bullish on the current market position, and my next major price objective for the 1st Month futures was 2820. The markets all time high at that date had been 2526 just the week before, 6 points higher than the 19th February 1997 high.**

I noted at the time their were a lot of bearish people in the audience.

## Price Resistance Levels Based on Past Ranges

The first step is to calculate all the EXPANSIONS and ALTERNATE wave PROJECTION levels of the Intermediate degree ranges.

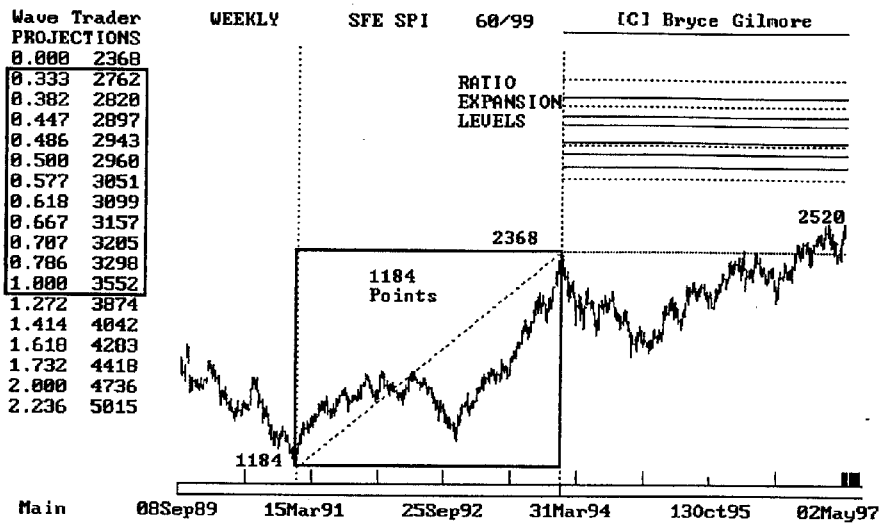



FIG 13.01 DIRECT EXPANSION 1991-94 RANGE FOR FUTURE RESISTANCE LEVELS

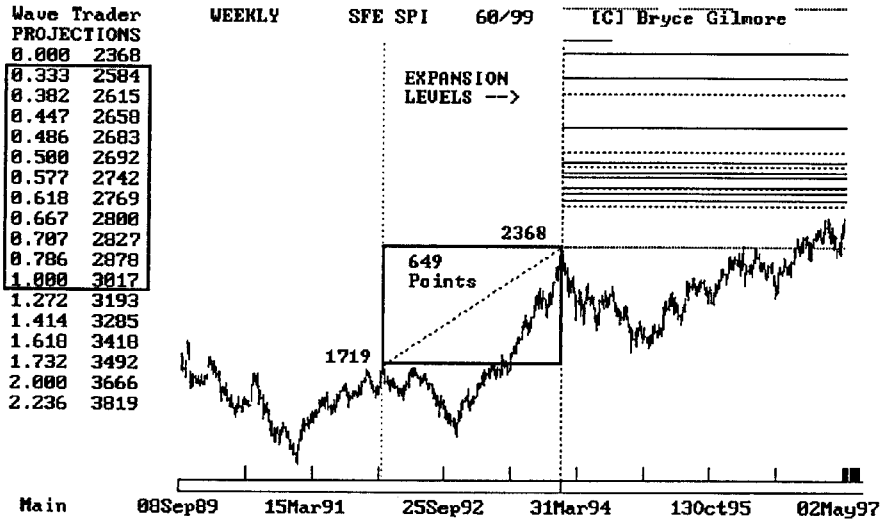



FIG 13.02 RATIO EXPANSION OF THE 1992 HIGH - 1994 HIGH RANGE RESISTANCE

Each of the charts and price projection levels are self explanatory. Once the calculations have been observed you look for clusters at the same price level.

You must remember, that prior to these calculations being made, we already have the knowledge there is an existing Geometry between the ranges we are using.

| FIG 13.01 | | FIG 13.02 | | FIG 13.03 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **2762** | **0.333** | 2742 | | 2709 | |
| **2820** | **0.382** | **2769** | **0.618** | **2760** | **0.382** |
| 2897 | | 2800 | | **2827** | **0.447** |
| 2943 | | **2827** | **0.707** | 2867 | |
| **2960** | 0.500 | **2878** | 0.786 | **2881** | 0.500 |
| **3051** | 0.577 | 3017 | | **2960** | 0.577 |
| **3099** | 0.618 | 3193 | | 3002 | |
| 3157 | | 3285 | | **3053** | 0.667 |
| 3205 | | 3418 | | **3094** | 0.707 |

Strongest resistance levels with 3 hits are:-
2760-69 2820-2827

Second preferences with 2 hits are:-
2878-2881 2960 3051-3 3094-99

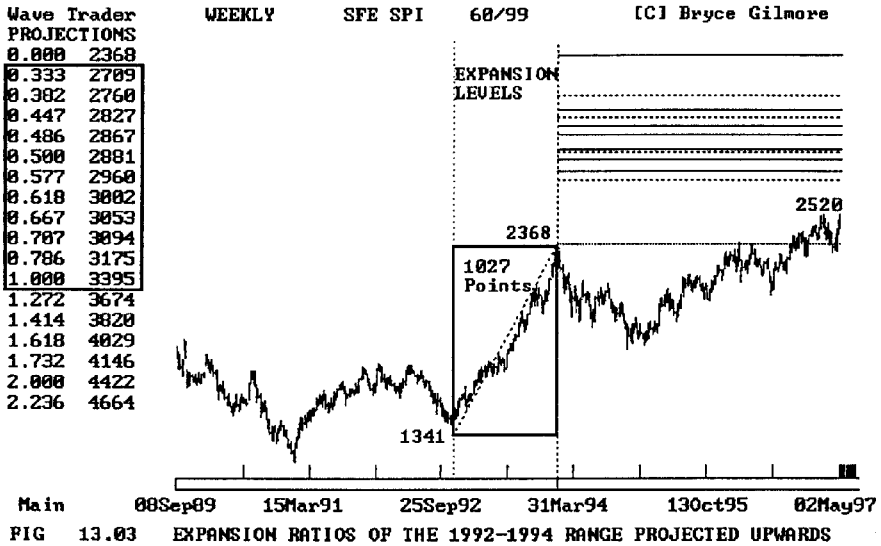


FIG 13.03 EXPANSION RATIOS OF THE 1992-1994 RANGE PROJECTED UPWARDS

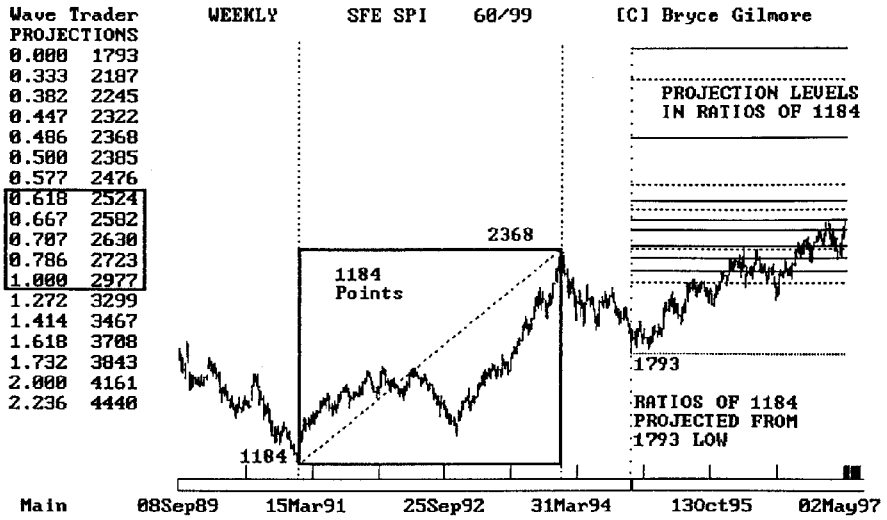



FIG 13.04 ALTERNATE PRICE PROJECTION OF 1184 POINTS FROM 1793 LOW

It is interesting to note that the range projections in Figs 13.04 and 13.05 had conjunctions at 2524 and 2519 on ratios of 0.618 and 0.707.

The next harmonic ratio 1.000 in Fig 13.05 falls at 2820.

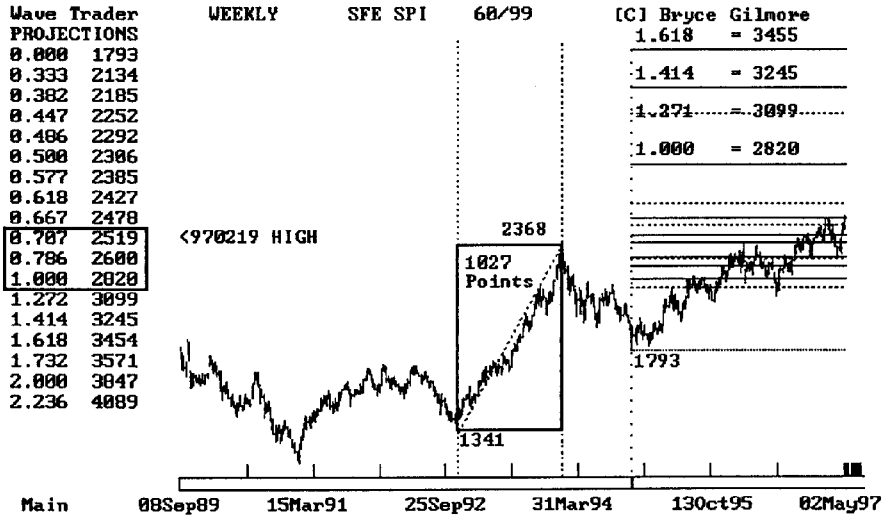



FIG 13.05 ALTERNATE WAVE PROJECTION 1992-94 RANGE FROM THE 1994 LOW

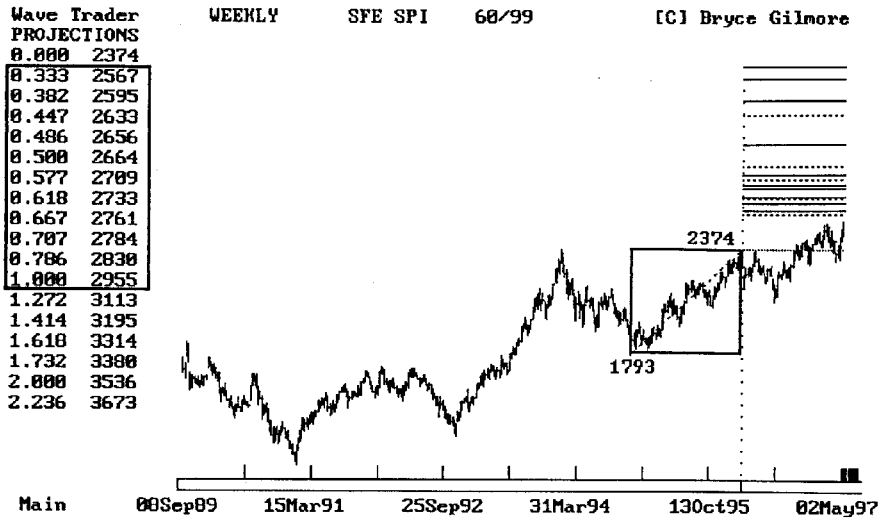



FIG 13.06 EXPANSION OF 1994-1996 RANGE FOR FUTURE RESISTANCE LEVELS

The RHYTHM projections in Fig 13.06 and 13.07 are 0.786 and 1.272 at 2830 and 2825.


FIG 13.07 ALTERNATE WAVE PROJECTION 1994-1996 RANGE FROM JULY 1996 LOW

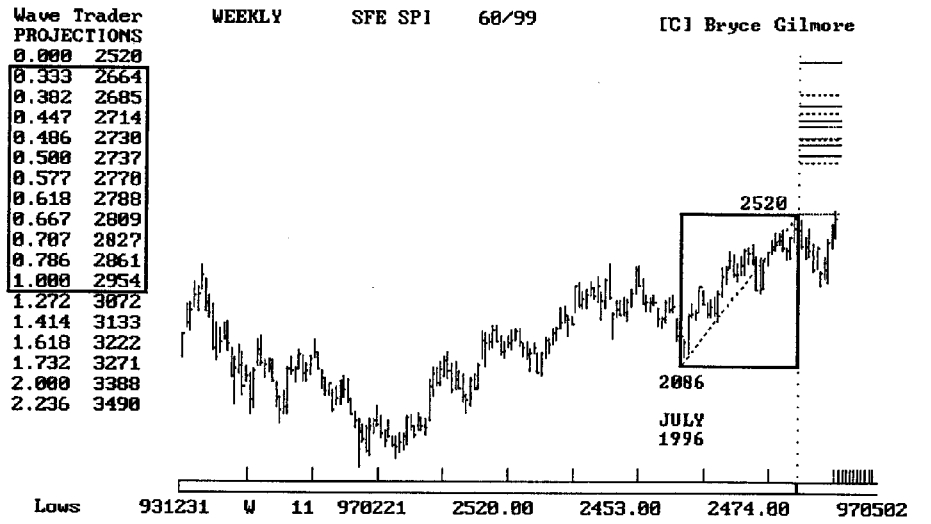



FIG 13.08 EXPANSION OF INTERMEDIATE DEGREE RANGE JULY 1996 - FEBRUARY 1997

When I began to focus on the Minor Degree geometry I found a double hit at 2827 as a 0.707 projection in Fig 13.08 and a diagonal projection of 2.236 in Fig 13.09.

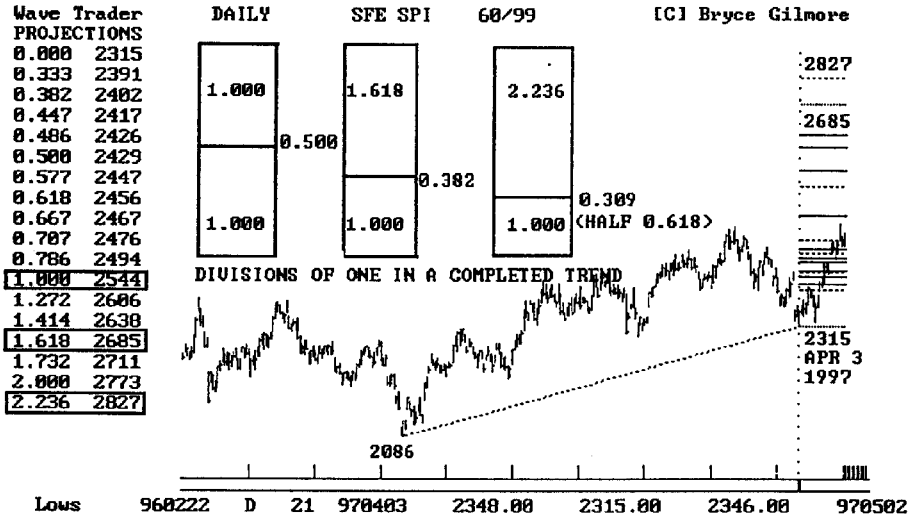



FIG 13.09 INTERNAL PRICE PROJECTIONS (DIAGONAL See 3.2, 3.4)

## Summary of Charts 13.01 to 13.09

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fig 13.01 | 2762 | **2820** |
| Fig 13.02 | 2769 | **2827** |
| Fig 13.03 | 2760 | **2827** |
| Fig 13.04 | 2723 | 2977 |
| Fig 13.05 | | **2820** |
| Fig 13.06 | 2761 | **2830** |
| Fig 13.07 | | **2825** |
| Fig 13.08 | 2770 | **2827** |
| Fig 13.09 | 2773 | **2827** |

The target prices calculated in the range 2760-2773 fell in 6 out of the 9 charts, 2820-2830 was projected in 8 out of the 9 charts.

This is not an after the event demonstration, as I am on record, at both the 5th May 1997, Sydney Futures Exchange, Melbourne Expo, and my own Dynamic Time and Price Trading Seminar, held in Melbourne Saturday, May 10th 1997. At both venues I supplied my next major price target for the SPI 1st month futures as 2820. This is fact, it is written in stone and the calculations were made **5 months in advance.**

The market finally reached the outside target of 2827 (intra-day high) on the 2nd October 1997 and fell 617 points in 26 days.

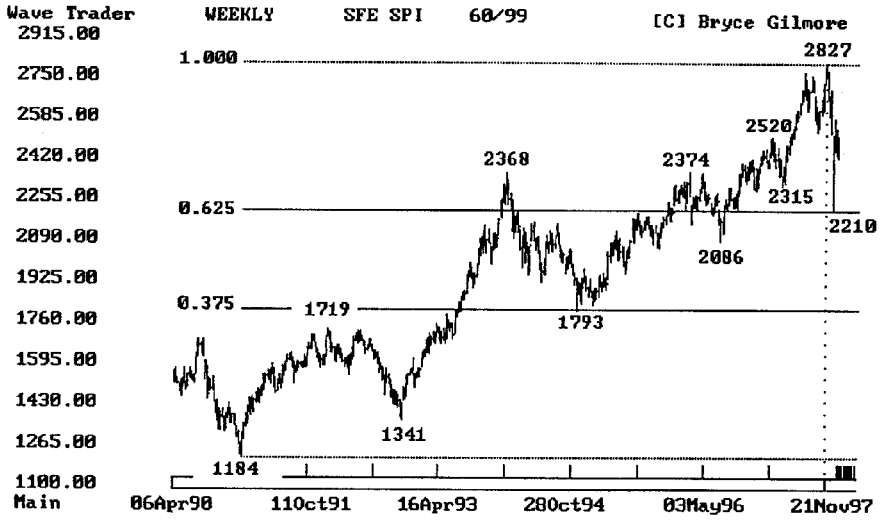



FIG 13.10 SHARE PRICE INDEX MADE HIGH AT 2827 ON OCTOBER 2nd 1997

## PRICE PROJECTION LEVELS For future high targets Sydney Share Price Index 1st Month

| | 13.01 | 13.02 | 13.03 | 13.04 | 13.05 | 13.06 | 13.07 | 13.08 | 13.09 | NEW | NEW | NEW | NEW |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| START | 1184 | 1719 | 1341 | 1184 | 1341 | 1793 | 1793 | 2086 | 2086 | 1793 | 1793 | 2086 | 2368 |
| END | 2368 | 2368 | 2368 | 2368 | 2368 | 2374 | 2374 | 2520 | 2315 | 2827 | 2827 | 2827 | 2827 |
| FROM | 2368 | 2368 | 2368 | 1793 | 1793 | 2374 | 2086 | 2520 | 2315 | 2827 | 2210 | 2827 | 2827 |
| RANGE | 1184 | 649 | 1027 | 1184 | 1027 | 581 | 581 | 434 | 229 | 1034 | 1034 | 741 | 459 |
| D-A-I wave | D | D | D | A | A | D | A | D | I | D | A | D | D |
| 0.25 | 2664 | 2530 | 2625 | 2089 | 2050 | **2519** | 2231 | 2629 | 2372 | 3086 | 2469 | 3012 | 2942 |
| 0.3 | 2723 | 2563 | 2676 | 2148 | 2101 | 2548 | 2260 | 2650 | 2384 | 3137 | **2520** | 3049 | 2965 |
| 0.333 | 2762 | 2584 | 2710 | 2187 | 2135 | 2567 | 2279 | 2665 | 2391 | 3171 | 2554 | 3074 | 2980 |
| 0.382 | **2820** | 2616 | 2760 | 2245 | 2185 | 2596 | 2308 | 2686 | 2402 | 3222 | 2605 | 3110 | 3002 |
| 0.447 | 2897 | 2658 | **2827** | 2322 | 2252 | 2634 | 2346 | 2714 | 2417 | 3289 | 2672 | 3158 | 3032 |
| 0.486 | 2943 | 2683 | 2867 | 2368 | 2292 | 2656 | 2368 | 2731 | 2426 | 3330 | 2713 | 3187 | 3050 |
| 0.5 | 2960 | 2693 | 2882 | 2385 | 2307 | 2665 | 2377 | 2737 | 2430 | 3344 | 2727 | 3198 | 3057 |
| 0.577 | 3051 | 2742 | 2961 | 2476 | 2386 | 2709 | 2421 | 2770 | 2447 | 3424 | 2807 | 3255 | 3092 |
| 0.618 | 3100 | 2769 | 3003 | **2525** | 2428 | 2733 | 2445 | 2788 | 2457 | 3466 | 2849 | 3285 | 3111 |
| 0.667 | 3158 | 2801 | 3053 | 2583 | 2478 | 2762 | 2474 | 2809 | 2468 | 3517 | 2900 | 3321 | 3133 |
| 0.707 | 3205 | **2827** | 3094 | 2630 | **2519** | 2785 | 2497 | **2827** | 2477 | 3558 | 2941 | 3351 | 3152 |
| 0.75 | 3256 | 2855 | 3138 | 2681 | 2563 | 2810 | **2522** | 2846 | 2487 | 3603 | 2986 | 3383 | 3171 |
| 0.786 | 3299 | 2878 | 3175 | 2724 | 2600 | **2831** | 2543 | 2861 | 2495 | 3640 | 3023 | 3409 | 3188 |
| 0.875 | 3404 | 2936 | 3267 | **2829** | 2692 | 2882 | 2594 | 2900 | **2515** | 3732 | 3115 | 3475 | 3229 |
| 1 | 3552 | 3017 | 3395 | 2977 | **2820** | 2955 | 2667 | 2954 | 2544 | 3861 | 3244 | 3568 | 3286 |
| 1.272 | 3874 | 3194 | 3674 | 3299 | 3099 | 3113 | **2825** | 3072 | 2606 | 4142 | 3525 | 3770 | 3411 |
| 1.414 | 4042 | 3286 | 3820 | 3467 | 3245 | 3196 | 2908 | 3134 | 2639 | 4289 | 3672 | 3875 | 3476 |
| 1.618 | 4284 | 3418 | 4030 | 3709 | 3455 | 3314 | 3026 | 3222 | 2686 | 4500 | 3883 | 4026 | 3570 |
| 1.732 | 4419 | 3492 | 4147 | 3844 | 3572 | 3380 | 3092 | 3272 | 2712 | 4618 | 4001 | 4110 | 3622 |
| 2 | 4736 | 3666 | 4422 | 4161 | 3847 | 3536 | 3248 | 3388 | 2773 | 4895 | 4278 | 4309 | 3745 |
| 2.236 | 5015 | 3819 | 4664 | 4440 | 4089 | 3673 | 3385 | 3490 | **2827** | 5139 | 4522 | 4484 | 3853 |
| 2.5 | 5328 | 3991 | 4936 | 4753 | 4361 | 3827 | 3539 | 3605 | 2888 | 5412 | 4795 | 4680 | 3975 |
| 2.618 | 5468 | 4067 | 5057 | 4893 | 4482 | 3895 | 3607 | 3656 | 2915 | 5534 | 4917 | 4767 | 4029 |
| 2.828 | 5716 | 4203 | 5272 | 5141 | 4697 | 4017 | 3729 | 3747 | 2963 | 5751 | 5134 | 4923 | 4125 |
| 3 | 5920 | 4315 | 5449 | 5345 | 4874 | 4117 | 3829 | 3822 | 3002 | 5929 | 5312 | 5050 | 4204 |
| 4 | 7104 | 4964 | 6476 | 6529 | 5901 | 4698 | 4410 | 4256 | 3231 | 6963 | 6346 | 5791 | 4663 |
| 5 | 8288 | 5613 | 7503 | 7713 | 6928 | 5279 | 4991 | 4690 | 3460 | 7997 | 7380 | 6532 | 5122 |

Examine these tables for price clusters once the Sydney Share Price Index trades higher than the 2827 high.

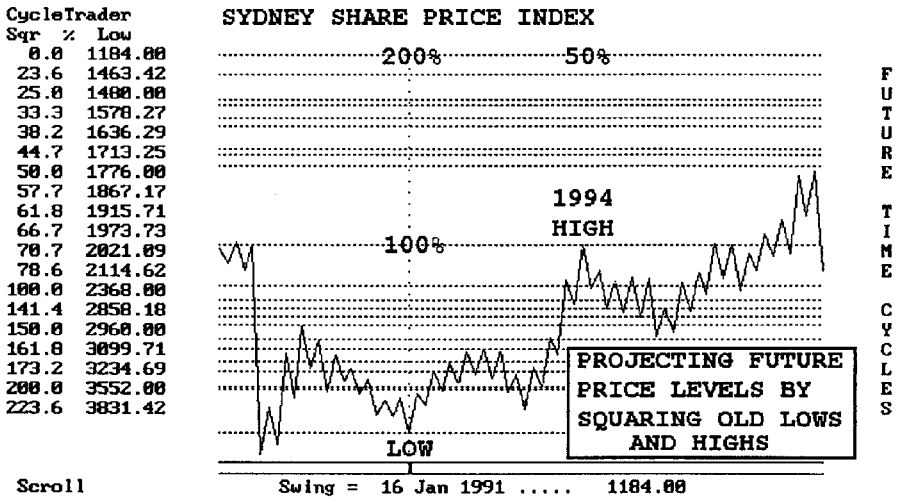
Notes:-

## Forecasting using Percentage Change to Price

In addition to the price projection techniques just explained you can back up your calculations by calculating important percentage change levels from major highs and lows.

It is quite common for past highs and lows to "SQUARE" ratio gains and declines with future change in trend levels.

The Sydney Share Price Index made an exact 100% gain from the 1991 low into the 1994 high. This would indicate to me that any future "squarings" of these two levels, ie., 1991 low, 1184 and 1994 high, 2368 would be important. For instance the 150% level from the 1991 low is the same level as a 25% increase from the 1994 high, 2960. Likewise 200% and 50% would give a target price of 3552.




The same principles also apply for "squaring" percentage declines into lows, refer to 3-7 and 10.9. The strongest level in a decline is a 50% fall in value.

I have included a table of percentage increases for the SPI for important highs and lows from the 1991 low up until the Oct 1997 low. You can look for clusters of levels and evaluate their future relationships with the price projection methods.

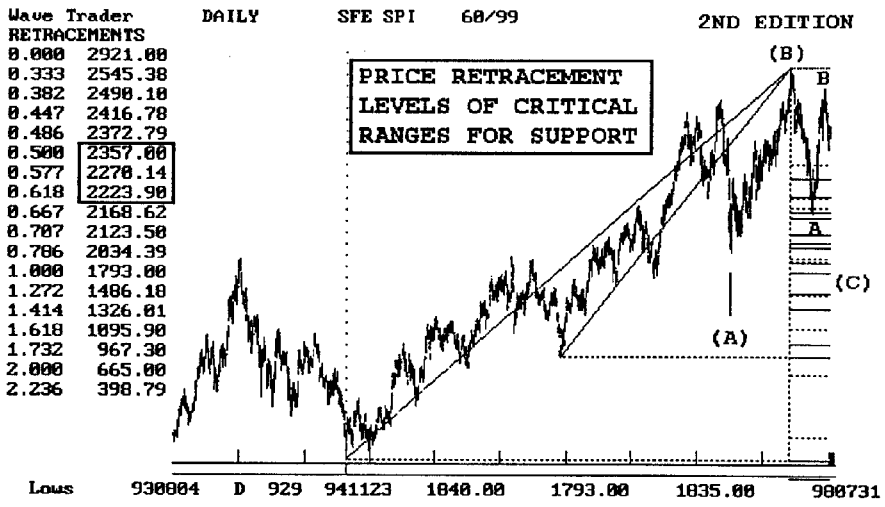
## Percentage Change to Price Levels

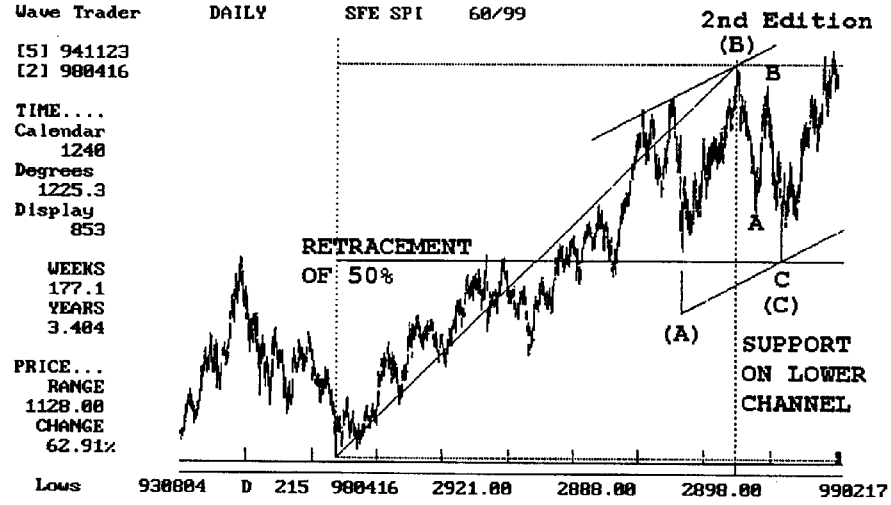
| highs | | 1719 | | 2368 | | 2374 | | 2520 | | 2827 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| lows | 1184 | | 1341 | | 1793 | | 2086 | | 2315 | | 2210 |
| 20.0% | 1421 | 2063 | 1609 | 2842 | 2152 | 2849 | 2503 | 3024 | 2778 | 3392 | 2652 |
| 23.6% | 1463 | 2125 | 1657 | 2927 | 2216 | 2934 | 2578 | 3115 | 2861 | 3494 | 2732 |
| **25.0%** | 1480 | 2149 | 1676 | 2960 | 2241 | 2968 | 2608 | 3150 | 2894 | 3534 | 2763 |
| **33.3%** | 1578 | 2291 | 1788 | 3157 | 2390 | 3165 | 2781 | 3359 | 3086 | 3768 | 2946 |
| **38.2%** | 1636 | 2376 | 1853 | 3273 | 2478 | 3281 | 2883 | 3483 | 3199 | 3907 | 3054 |
| 44.7% | 1713 | 2487 | 1940 | 3426 | 2594 | 3435 | 3018 | 3646 | 3350 | 4091 | 3198 |
| 48.6% | 1759 | 2554 | 1993 | 3519 | 2664 | 3528 | 3100 | 3745 | 3440 | 4201 | 3284 |
| **50.0%** | 1776 | 2579 | 2012 | 3552 | 2690 | 3561 | 3129 | 3780 | 3473 | 4241 | 3315 |
| 57.7% | 1867 | 2711 | 2115 | 3734 | 2828 | 3744 | 3290 | 3974 | 3651 | 4458 | 3485 |
| **61.8%** | 1916 | 2781 | 2170 | 3831 | 2901 | 3841 | 3375 | 4077 | 3746 | 4574 | 3576 |
| 66.7% | 1974 | 2866 | 2235 | 3947 | 2989 | 3957 | 3477 | 4201 | 3859 | 4713 | 3684 |
| 70.7% | 2021 | 2934 | 2289 | 4042 | 3061 | 4052 | 3561 | 4302 | 3952 | 4826 | 3772 |
| 75.0% | 2072 | 3008 | 2347 | 4144 | 3138 | 4155 | 3651 | 4410 | 4051 | 4947 | 3868 |
| 78.6% | 2115 | 3070 | 2395 | 4229 | 3202 | 4240 | 3726 | 4501 | 4135 | 5049 | 3947 |
| 87.5% | 2220 | 3223 | 2514 | 4440 | 3362 | 4451 | 3911 | 4725 | 4341 | 5301 | 4144 |
| **100.0%** | **2368** | 3438 | 2682 | 4736 | 3586 | 4748 | 4172 | 5040 | 4630 | 5654 | 4420 |
| 111.8% | 2508 | 3641 | 2840 | 5015 | 3798 | 5028 | 4418 | 5337 | 4903 | 5988 | 4681 |
| 125.0% | 2664 | 3868 | 3017 | 5328 | 4034 | 5342 | 4694 | 5670 | 5209 | 6361 | 4973 |
| 133.3% | 2762 | 4010 | 3129 | 5525 | 4183 | 5539 | 4867 | 5879 | 5401 | 6595 | 5156 |
| **141.4%** | 2858 | 4150 | 3237 | 5716 | 4328 | 5731 | 5036 | 6083 | 5588 | 6824 | 5335 |
| **150.0%** | 2960 | 4298 | 3353 | 5920 | 4483 | 5935 | 5215 | 6300 | 5788 | 7068 | 5525 |
| **161.8%** | 3100 | 4500 | 3511 | 6199 | 4694 | 6215 | 5461 | 6597 | 6061 | 7401 | 5786 |
| 166.7% | 3158 | 4585 | 3576 | 6315 | 4782 | 6331 | 5563 | 6721 | 6174 | 7540 | 5894 |
| 173.2% | 3235 | 4696 | 3664 | 6469 | 4898 | 6486 | 5699 | 6885 | 6325 | 7723 | 6038 |
| 175.0% | 3256 | 4727 | 3688 | 6512 | 4931 | 6529 | 5737 | 6930 | 6366 | 7774 | 6078 |
| **200.0%** | 3552 | 5157 | 4023 | 7104 | 5379 | 7122 | 6258 | 7560 | 6945 | 8481 | 6630 |
| 223.6% | 3831 | 5563 | 4339 | 7663 | 5802 | 7682 | 6750 | 8155 | 7491 | 9148 | 7152 |
| 250.0% | 4144 | 6017 | 4694 | 8288 | 6276 | 8309 | 7301 | 8820 | 8103 | 9895 | 7735 |
| 261.8% | 4284 | 6219 | 4852 | 8567 | 6487 | 8589 | 7547 | 9117 | 8376 | 10228 | 7996 |
| 282.8% | 4532 | 6580 | 5133 | 9065 | 6864 | 9088 | 7985 | 9647 | 8862 | 10822 | 8460 |
| 300.0% | 4736 | 6876 | 5364 | 9472 | 7172 | 9496 | 8344 | 10080 | 9260 | 11308 | 8840 |

# Forecasting Price Levels in a falling Market (2nd Edition)

Start by making price retracement calculations for the critical ranges working back from the high.

Look for levels common to 2 or more ranges.



# How to Forecast Support in the next SPI Bear Market (2nd Edition)

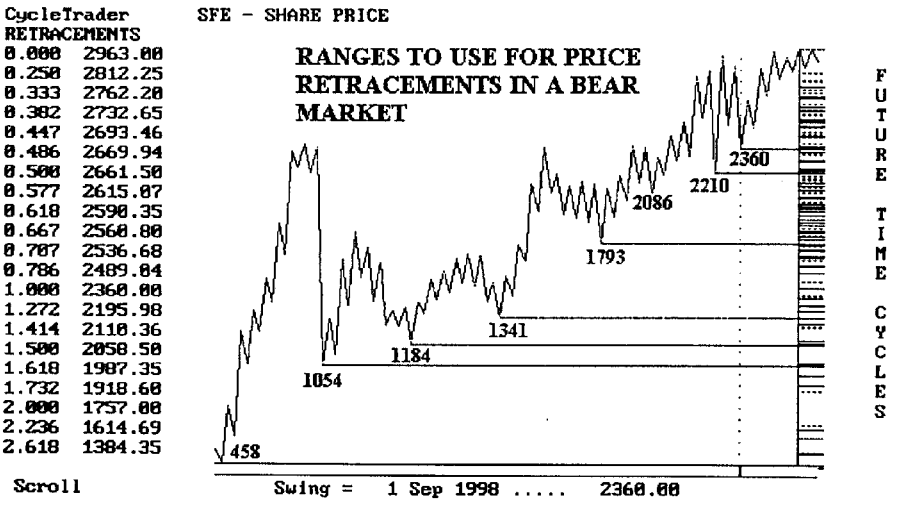
It is now 18th February 1999 and I have been making additions to this chapter for a second edition printing. A high of 2963 was made in the SPI on the 4th February, 1999. Exactly 5 years from the 1994 high.

As yet this high has not been confirmed as a major bull market high, although if you review all of the prior calculations the 2960 level was a critical resistance point in this markets structure.

The first step you will take to forecast support for the next MAJOR bear market is to take the last major range up and calculate ratio retracement levels. This range begins from the 1st September, 1998 low 2360. You can then take the major ranges starting from:-

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 28th October, 1997 | - | low | 2210 |
| 17th July, 1996 | - | low | 2086 |
| 23rd November, 1994 | - | low | 1793 |
| 16th November, 1992 | - | low | 1341 |
| 17th January, 1991 | - | low | 1184 |
| 11th November, 1987 | - | low | 1054 |
| CONTRACT LOW | | | 458 |

A realistic expectation would be a 38.2% retracement of the range beginning from the 1184 low and the ultimate high.



## Previous Bear Market Ranges and % Declines

It will pay you to become familiar with the point and % change declines, in prior bear markets of similar degree, as future declines will most likely relate to one or more of them.

For instance the major bear markets and sharp declines in the **Share Price Index** have been:-

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1987 crash | 1333.5 | 55.9% |
| 1989 - 1991 | 671 | 36.2% |
| 1992 | 378 | 22% |
| 1994 | 575 | 24.3% |
| 1997 | 617 | 21.8% |
| 1998 | 561 | 19.2% |

Falls in value of between 19% and 24% are common and should be viewed as a minimum objective in any future bear market.

I would also repeat these processes for the Cash (**All Ordinaries Index**) and monitor them as well.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1970 - 1974 | 275 | 61.3% |
| 1980 - 1982 | 303 | 40.6% |
| 1987 crash | 1163 | 50.3% |
| 1989 - 1991 | 587 | 32.9% |
| 1992 | 342 | 20.2% |
| 1994 | 535 | 22.8% |
| 1997 | 587 | 21% |
| 1998 | 508 | 17.6% |

An interesting co-incidence I have observed is that you can add some of these together and relate them as groups. For instance 275+303+587 = 1165, 587+342+535 = 1464 and 303+1163 = 1466.

In any case, always bear in mind the Elliott Wave Theory of markets, which suggests, any major decline in prices should terminate in the vicinity of the 4th wave of lesser degree. In the case of the Australian Share Market this would be somewhere between the 1994 high 2368, and the 1994 low 1793, basis the Share Price Index.

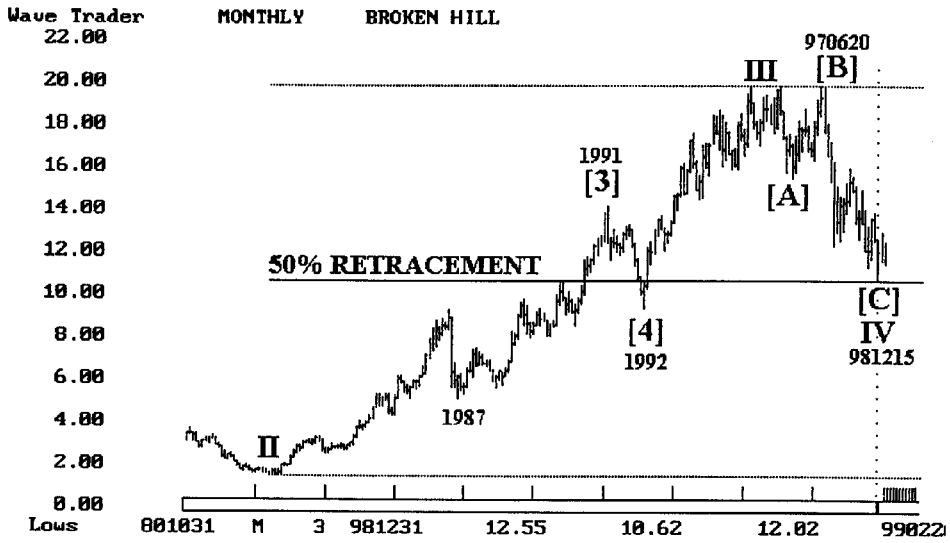
## Broken Hill Proprietary Ltd (Updated)

In an earlier section of this manual I used BHP to demonstrate ways to count Elliott Waves. At the time of printing the 1st edition of this manual, BHP was entrenched in a bear market which began from a double top at $20.05 on the 20th June, 1997. See 11-7 which was written over a year ago.

Over the past year the decline continued with major restructuring taking place within the company. On the 15th December 1998, BHP made low at $10.62 and has held this support for over 2 months.

It looks like the rot has been contained and the technical position is perfect as the 50% retracement for a IV wave of cycle degree has terminated in the vicinity of the 4th wave of lesser degree.

Alternately if the low of $10.62 is taken out the next support is at the 50% retracement of the range up from the 1974 low or at the 50% decline in value from the June 20, 1997 high.



# 14
# Planetary Cycles

The seasons spring, summer, fall and winter, on the Earth, are the direct effect of our planetary movement around the Sun. Tidal movement is the result of gravity forces from the Moon in orbit around the Earth.

There is a line of thought called **financial astrology** that claims market cycles can be predicted from the planetary cycles and planetary aspects.

Personally, I have witnessed instances, where the length of a bull market or bear market has terminated in the time of a Mercury, Venus or Mars year or a ratio thereof. I'm not so sure that one needs to utilize this information in an analysis, but I will provide the necessary information anyway.

**Planetary Years**
The planets of our solar system orbit the Sun; planets in order of closest to furtherest from the Sun are:-

| SUN | Days | Years |
|---|---|---|
| Mercury | 88 | |
| Venus | 225 | |
| Earth | 365 | 1 |
| Mars | 687 | 1.88 |
| Jupiter | 4331 | 11.86 |
| Saturn | | 29.46 |
| Uranus | | 84.01 |
| Neptune | | 164.7 |
| Pluto | | 247.69 |

Planets travel around the Sun in eliptical paths speeding up and slowing down the rate of travel through the circle of 360 degrees relative to calendar days.
This means that a fraction of a year, say 90° of the orbit, will be longer or shorter in calendar days than another segment of 90°.

It is important for new students of financial astrology to understand how to plot the positions of the planets. For this we use an Ephemeris.

## Heliocentric Planetary Positions

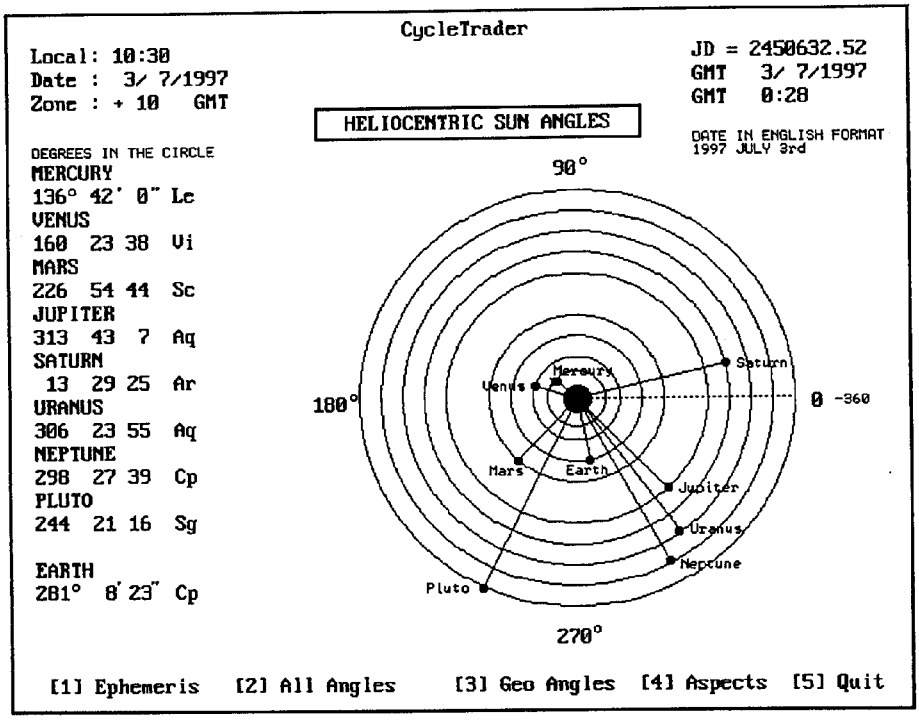
CycleTrader contains an ephemeris to plot planetary positions between 4000 BC and 4000 AD.

The 0° (degree) of the circle represents the location of the Earth and Sun at the September 22nd, Equinox. 90° is the December 22nd, Solstice.
180° is the March 21st, Equinox. 270° is the June 21st, Solstice.

An **Equinox** occurs twice a year when the Earth is on equal plane, ie., upright in axis with the Sun - Daylight hours are equal to darkness hours.

A **Solstice** occurs twice a year and marks when the Earth is at maximum tilt to the Sun - It is either the shortest daylight hours or longest daylight hours of the year, depending on which side of the equator you live on.

W.D. Gann taught that the Equinox and Solstice dates were important natural cycle dates and it was possible to get a change of trend on these dates in seasonal markets.



## Geocentric Planetary Positions

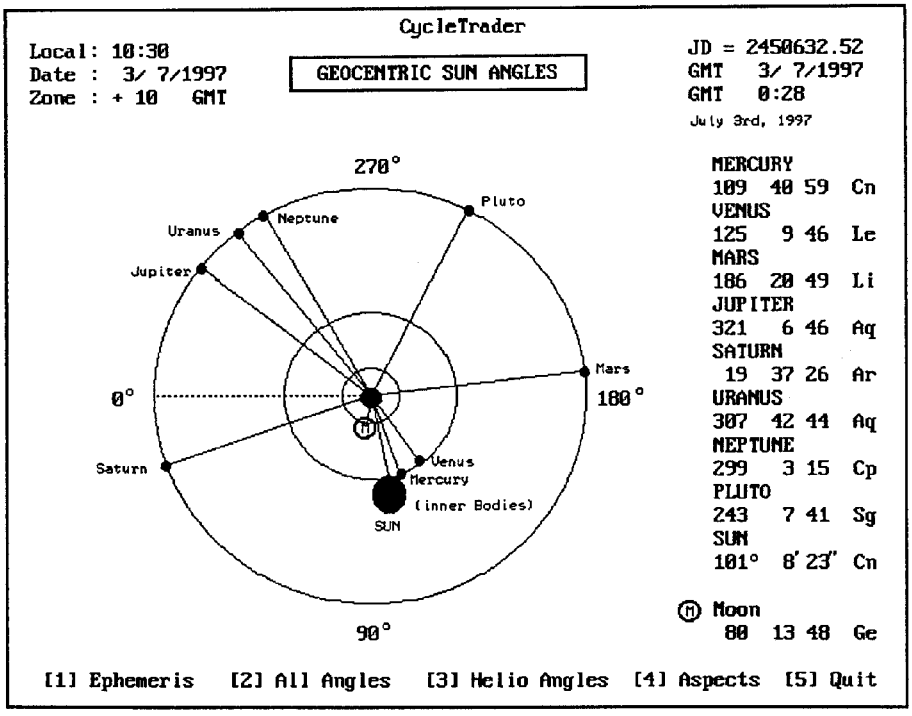
Geocentric planetary positions relate to the co-ordinates of the planets relative to someone on Earth looking out at the location of the planets.

The 0° (degree) position of the Sun represents the March 21st, Equinox. The Sun to Earth angles are 180° opposed to the heliocentric co-ordinates.

The other planets co-ordinates from Earth have to be calculated by vectors from their heliocentric position relative to the Sun and the Earth's position.

Much of the work I have seen on financial astrology is based on geocentric planetary cycles. One approach available is a book by Donald Bradley, "Stock Market Prediction". Another is "Astro-economics" written by L.J. Jensen.

**Astro Economics** is the study of regular economic cycles as they relate to planetary positions. Some schools of thought have devised ways of weighting planetary aspects as either positive or negative. Results are compared with the past and future predictions are based on the past observations.



## Planetary Aspects

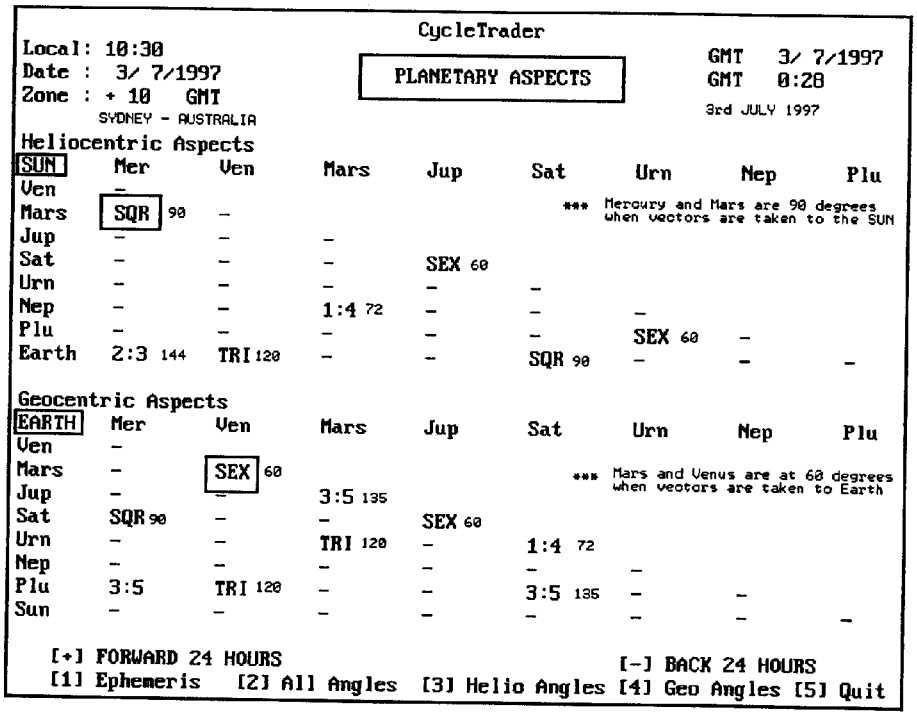
An Aspect is the term given to an angular relationship (degrees in the 360° circle) between two planets when sighted from a third planetary body.

There are **8 aspects** of importance according to **JOHANNES KEPLER** (1571-1630).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **CONJUNCT** | **0°** | **360°** | **RATIOS** |
| **SEXTILE** | **60°** | **1:5** | **60:300** |
| **QUINTILE** | **72°** | **1:4** | **72:288** |
| **QUADRATURE** | **90°** | **1:3** | **90:270** |
| **TRINE** | **120°** | **1:2** | **120:240** |
| **SESQUIQUADRATURE** | **135°** | **3:5** | **135:225** |
| **BIQUINTILE** | **144°** | **2:3** | **144:216** |
| **OPPOSITION** | **180°** | **1:1** | **180:180** |

The **90°** aspect is often referred to as **SQUARE.**

This is most probably **the origin of W.D. Gann's *Time by Degree* counts.** Not because of the aspects, but because of Kepler's laws of mathematical form. If you view the RATIOS column, I have inserted, it all appears to fit like a glove.



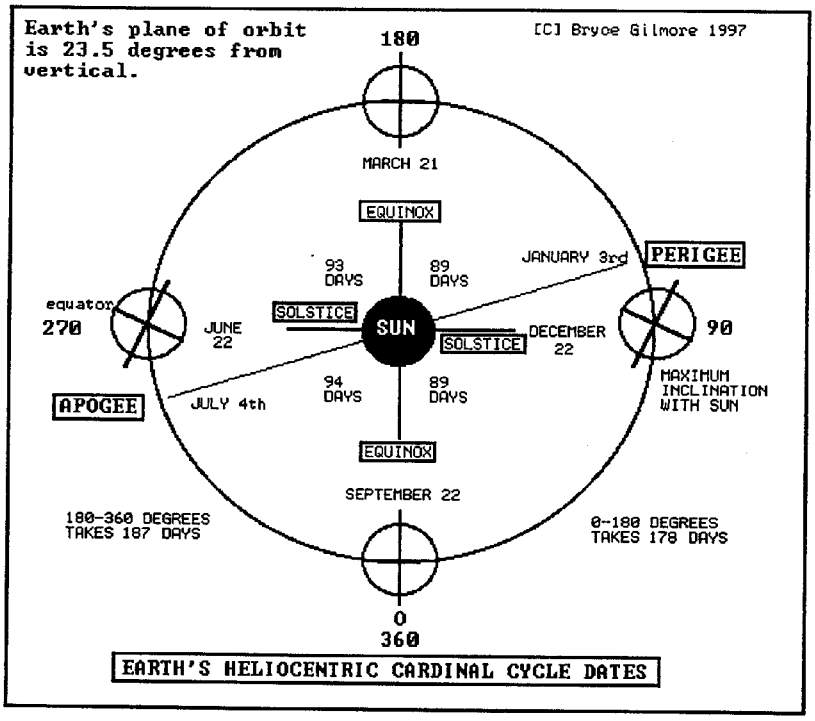
## Perigee, Apogee, Equinox and Solstice

The **Perigee** is the point in a planets orbit where it reaches its closest distance to the Sun.
The **Apogee** is the point in a planets orbit where it reaches its furthermost distance from the Sun.

Earth's perigee occurs in early January and the apogee in early July. The rate of change between degrees and calendar days progressively speeds up between the apogee and the perigee. Likewise it progressively slows down between the perigee and the apogee.

The **Perigee, January 3rd**, each year is another cyclic date to remember for a possible change in trend.
The **Apogee, July 4th**, each year is also equally important.

**Solstice and Equinox dates** are also important natural cycle dates each year. Equinoxes fall on September 22 and March 21, Solstices fall on December 22 and June 22 each year, within 1 day.



## Lunar Cycles - Solar Eclipse

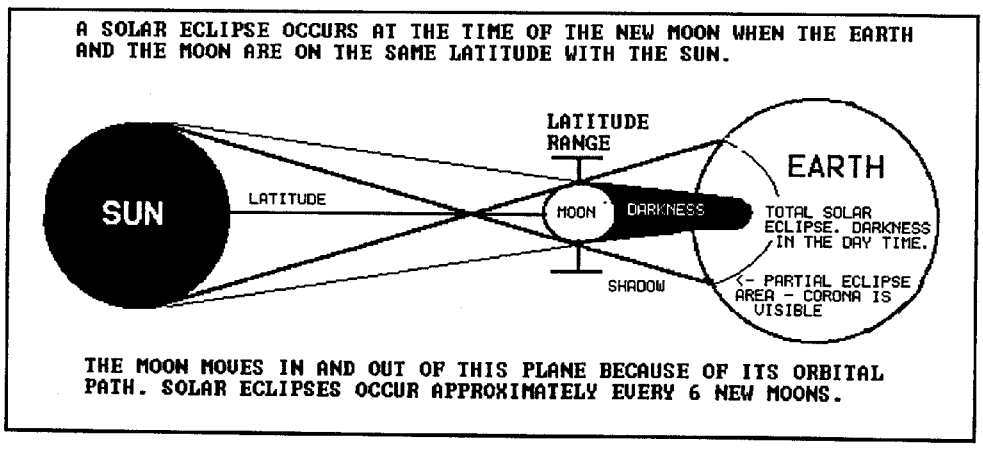
The new Moon occurs every 29.53 days, so does the full Moon, they are 14.76 days apart, and never vary.

The gravity effect of the Moon's position in its orbit creates a variation for the tidal forces on the Earth. The gravity effect is not restricted to the oceans but also to the Earth's crust. It has been proven that the most forceful effect of the Moon is at the new Moon period when the Moon is directly between the Sun and the Earth. This is the time when the Sun and the Moon join forces with their gravity effect

Gravity effects water more visually than any other Earth bound compound, and as we know water is the life blood of the planet. People are 80% water!

The solar eclipse cycle is normally every 177 days or 6 new moons. Although it can reduce to 5 or expand to 7 cycles. The most powerful effects are felt when the Moon is exactly on the same latitude to the Sun as the Earth is.

I have seen numerous articles endeavouring to correlate market change in trend with new and full moons, perhaps the most outstanding are those correlations with the new Moon on a solar eclipse.
My recommendation is that every market timer should monitor the new Moon periods and the solar eclipse dates and see how they figure in the dynamic time cycles of that market.
The technical public have already been conditioned to look to "buy on a full Moon and sell on a new Moon".



## Lunar Eclipse

A lunar eclipse occurs when the Moon is behind the Earth on the same latitude and the shadow of the Earth causes the full moon to go into darkness. If this phenomena occurs at night it has an unsettling effect on nature.

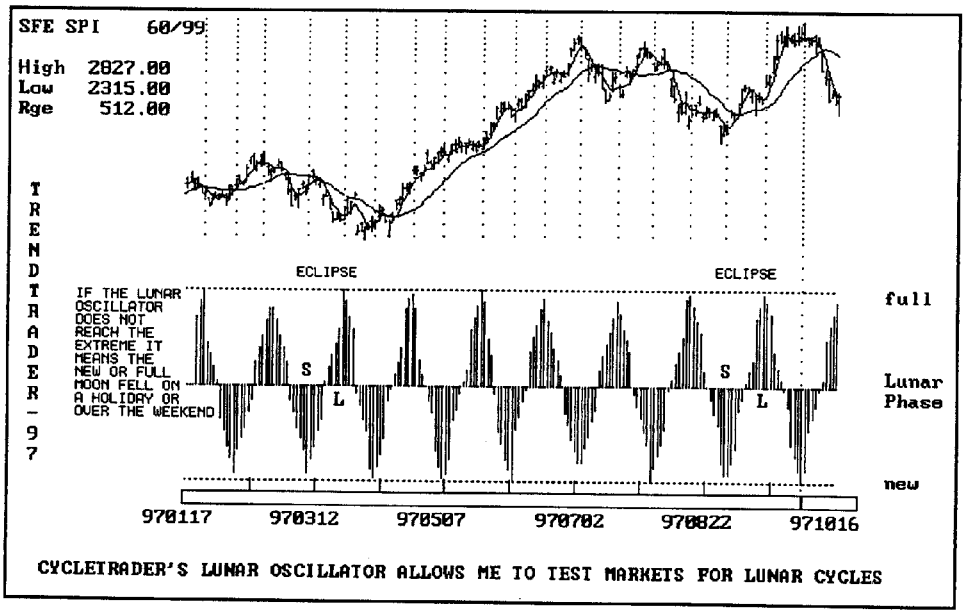
In my research of market activity I have not really found the lunar eclipse to be anymore useful, as a signal day, than an ordinary full moon.

Nevertheless it is in everyone's interest to monitor such activity and examine how these times fit into the dynamic structure of each market.

When dynamic cycle times and natural cycle times CONJUNCT then it could be a very important time signal, always be observant.

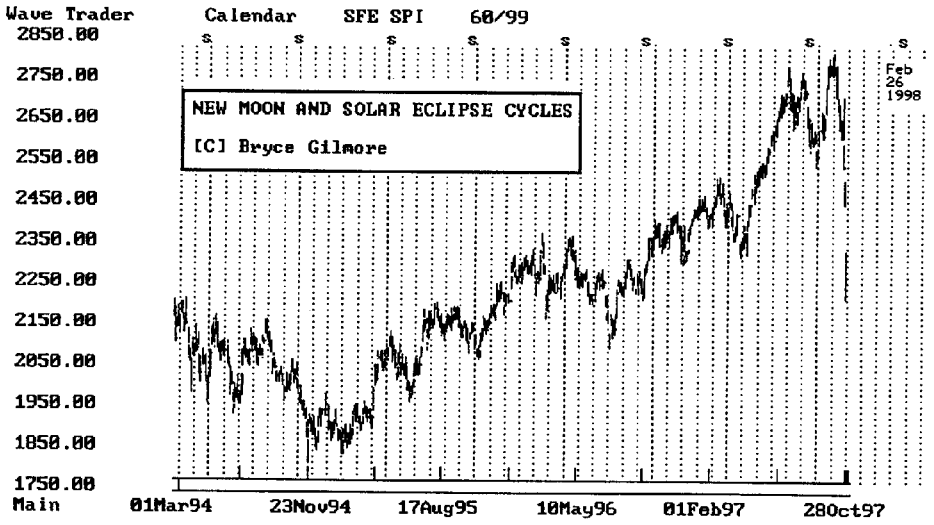
**Monitor future dates for-**
Combinations of Lunar cycles (New/Full/Eclipse) happening at the same time as other events such as Equinox, Solstice, Apogee, Perigee or Time by degree counts.

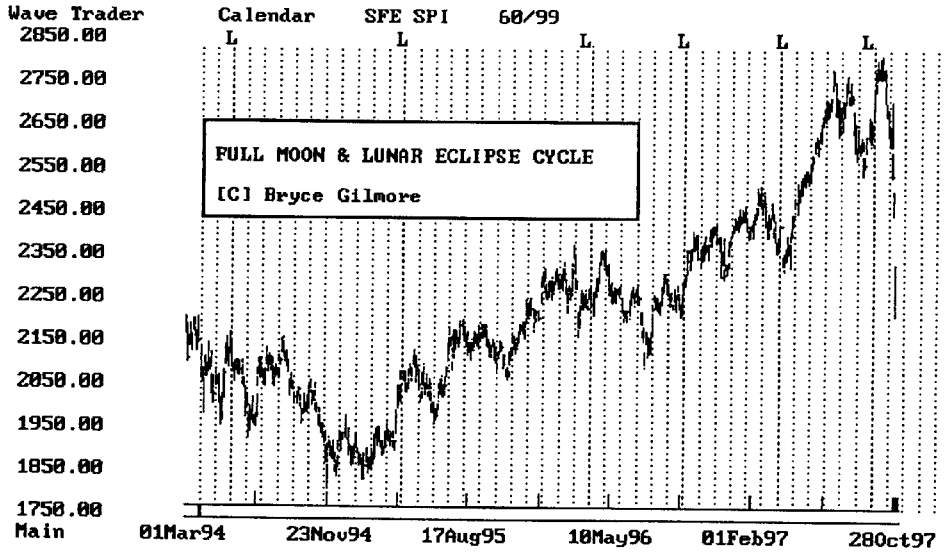
Below is an example of the new/full moon oscillations for 9 months, which included 2 eclipse periods.



## New and Full Moon cycles

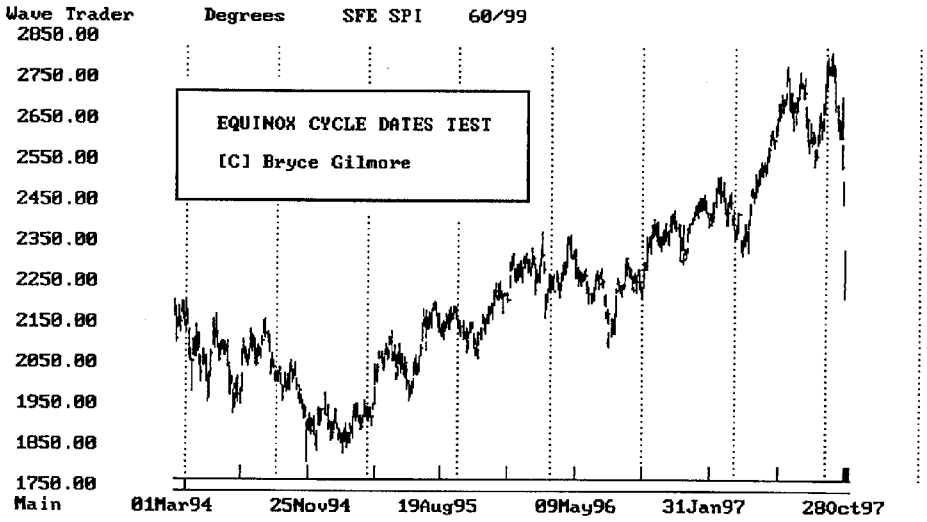
I have constructed a SHARE PRICE INDEX chart between March 1st, 1994 and October 28th 1997 so you can see if the New or Full moon cycle is a useful timing tool.

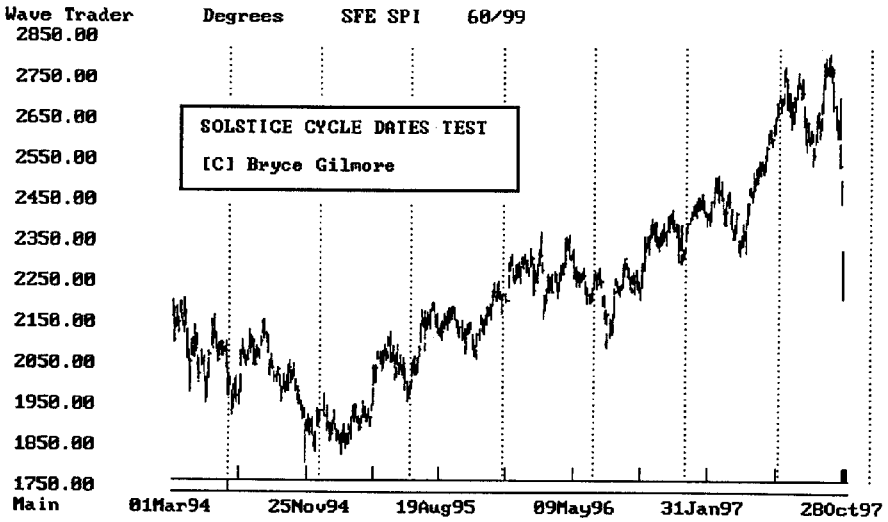


## Example of Equinox & Solstice Cycles

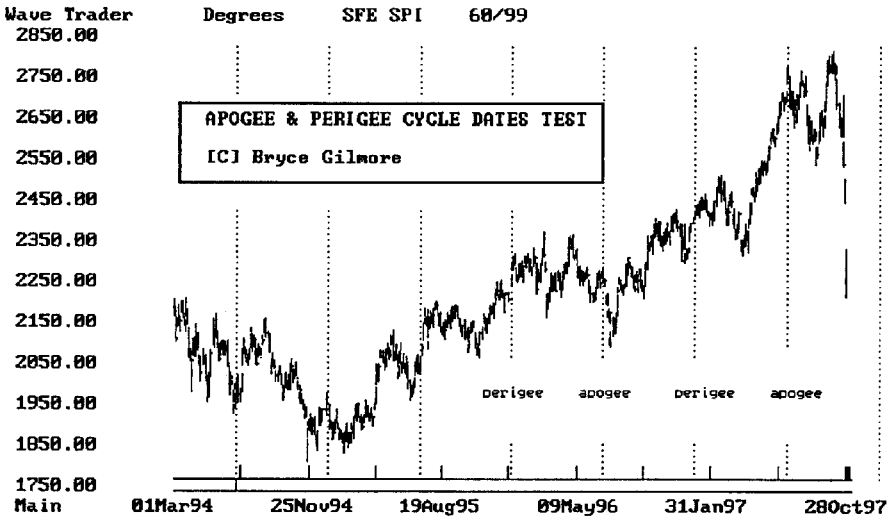
Although this is not an exhaustive test it does cover a three and one half year time frame. You can judge for yourself if these natural cycles represent an important timing tool.



## Apogee & Perigee Cycles

This example uses the same sample data as the previous ones covering the new and full moons and equinox, solstice cycles.




In the past I have given examples of these cycles, at major market highs and lows, and the information has had a lot of merit. The problem I now have with years of research, is I have not been able to quantify how to use this information in a trading plan. You can see for yourself the hit and miss record these cycles have.

My methods of analysis these days are strictly dynamic for each market as it plots its own course. I believe that if the planetary cycles are valid they will be evident within the market structure as it unfolds.

My current view is to use dynamic time and price analysis, if you at least understand the planetary phenomena, it may from time to time have a natural cause and effect on the markets you are trading. Each market creates its own cycles, the planetary influence may be a factor, but the dynamic ratio analysis of time will over-ride any natural cycle date.

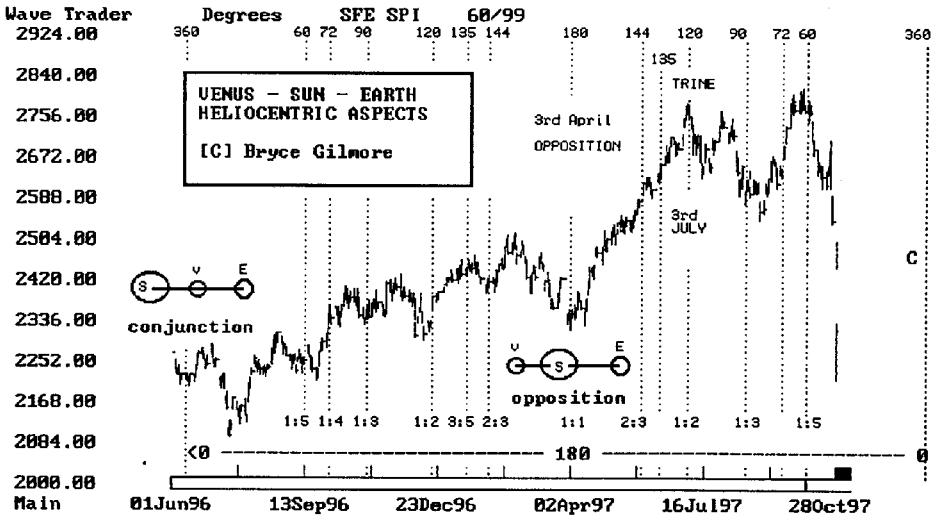
**If you get a natural cycle date such as an apogee, perigee, solar eclipse, equinox or solstice coinciding with strong rhythmic dynamic time cycles, then you could say you have a very strong tradeable signal.**

## Venus - Earth - Sun Aspects

Perhaps the most inviting phase I have noted within the study of planetary cycles is the way ***ASPECTS*** can often coincide with some major market tops and bottoms.

The Venus - Earth synodical period is fairly consistent at 584 days,
ie., the Venus - Earth - Sun angles return to their same position every 584 days.

From this sample the most powerful angular relationships for Venus appear to be 1:1 at opposition - 180, 1:5 at sextile - 60 and 1:2 at trine - 120 degrees.




| Aspect | | Degrees | Dates | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Conjunction | | 360 | 11 Jun 1996 | & | 16 Jan 1998 |
| Sextile | 1:5 | 60 | 14 Sep 1996 | & | **5 Oct 1997** |
| Quintile | 1:4 | 72 | 3 Oct 1996 | & | 17 Sep 1997 |
| Square | 1:3 | 90 | **31 Oct 1996** | & | 19 Aug 1997 |
| Trine | 1:2 | 120 | 20 Dec 1996 | & | **4 July 1997** |
| Sesquiquadrature | 3:5 | 135 | 14 Jan 1997 | & | 12 June 1997 |
| Biquintile | 2:3 | 144 | **31 Jan 1997** | & | 29 May 1997 |
| Opposition | 1:1 | 180 | **3 April 1997** | | |

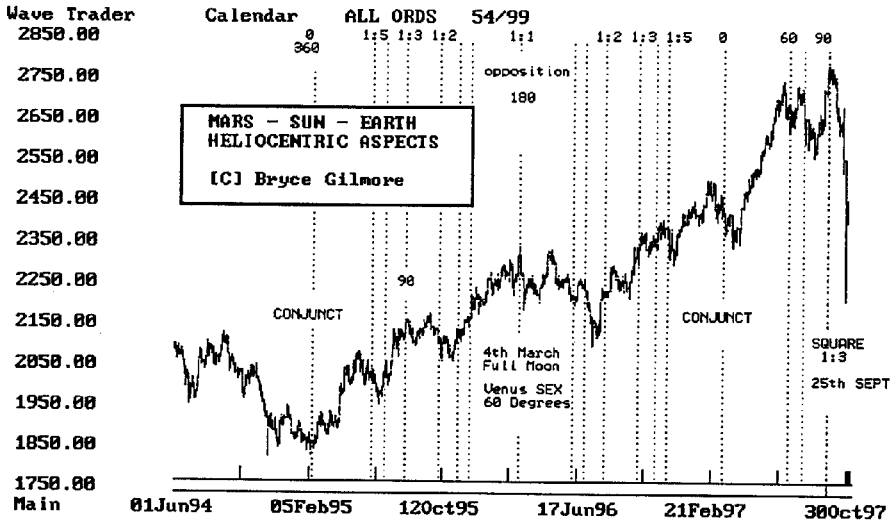
\# Significant market swings highlighted

## Mars - Earth - Sun Aspects

The Mars - Earth synodical period is an inconsistent cycle in as much as Mars has an irregular elliptical orbit around the Sun. Donald Bradley in "Stock Market Prediction" lists the cycle as 2.1354 years, ie., 780 days. The synodical time between the Conjunctions of 12th February, 1995 and 17th March, 1997 shown below took 764 days, 2.093 years. The half cycle to 4th March, 1996 opposition took 386 days and the next half cycle took 378 days.

| Conjunction | Opposition | Earth | Time Counts | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11 May 1984 | | 230° | | |
| 10 Jul 1986 | | 287° | | 790 |
| | **25 Aug 1987** | 331° | 411 | |
| 28 Sep 1988 | | 5° | 400 | 811 |
| | **30 Sep 1989** | 7° | 367 | 767 |
| 28 Nov 1990 | | 65° | 424 | 791 |
| | **8 Nov 1991** | 45° | 345 | 769 |
| 8 Jan 1993 | | 108° | 427 | 772 |
| | 27 Dec 1993 | 95° | 353 | 780 |
| **12 Feb 1995** | | 143° | 412 | 765 |
| | **4 Mar 1996** | 164° | 386 | 798 |
| 17 Mar 1997 | | 176° | 378 | 764 |

This test over 12 years shows how much the Synodical periods can vary.



Of the major Conjunctions and Oppositions listed overleaf significant market reversals of trend fell within orbs of 2°.

OPPOSITIONS.

| | |
|---|---|
| 25th August 1987. | Dow Jones & S&P 500 made high. |
| 4th October 1989. | All Ordinaries began a 15 month bear market. |
| 11th November 1991. | All Ordinaries began a 12 month bear market. |
| 4th March 1996. | All Ordinaries began a 5 month bear market. |

CONJUNCTIONS.

| | |
|---|---|
| 10th February 1995. | All Ordinaries began a 55 week bull market. |

| **Aspect** | | **Degrees** | **Dates** |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Conjunction** | | **360** | **12 Feb 1995** |
| Sextile | 1:5 | 60 | 3 June 1995 |
| Quintile | 1:4 | 72 | 27 June 1995 |
| Square | 1:3 | **90** | **3 Aug 1995** |
| Trine | 1:2 | 120 | 8 Oct 1995 |
| Sesquiquadrature | 3:5 | 135 | 12 Nov 1995 |
| Biquintile | 2:3 | 144 | 3 Dec 1995 |
| **Opposition** | 1:1 | **180** | **4 March 1996** |
| Biquintile | 2:3 | 144 | 10 June 1996 |
| Sesquiquadrature | 3:5 | **135** | **3 July 1996** |
| Trine | 1:2 | 120 | 8 Aug 1996 |
| Square | 1:3 | 90 | 9 Oct 1996 |
| Quintile | 1:4 | 72 | 11 Nov 1996 |
| Sextile | 1:5 | 60 | 2 Dec 1996 |
| **Conjunction** | | 360 | 17 March 1997 |
| Sextile | 1:5 | 60 | 16 July 1997 |
| Quintile | 1:4 | 72 | 12 Aug 1997 |
| Square | 1:3 | **90** | **25 September 1997** |

# Significant market swings highlighted

Although this study does nothing to prove or disprove the Astro-economic fraternity claims, it is nevertheless a starting point for further discussion and research.

In time one may find a useful way of using this information in a trading plan. I have the tools to carry out the research, all it is going to take is a student with the desire to get the answers.

# All Ordinaries Index - Heliocentric Study 1994-1996

To assist your research and information, I have prepared some ephemerid tables by quarter years 1994 through to the middle of 1996. This study is intended as an example of how you may explore coincidences of planetary positions at market change in trend dates. I don't wish to influence anyone's opinion so I am leaving this work to the student.

Planetary positions are calculated on the hour for each day at GMT - Greenwich Mean Time, this is on the 0° longitude, the meridian passing through Greenwich, England where the Sun crosses each day at noon.
Ephemeris time is based on the circle of 360° , but each day count is based on our normal daily clock (Universal Time). Midday is an even number and midnight is on the 0.5 increments.

If you wanted, you could get the exact minute of the aspects forming. For my research work within 1 hour of orb is satisfactory.

You can study the data and the charts to arrive at your own conclusions.

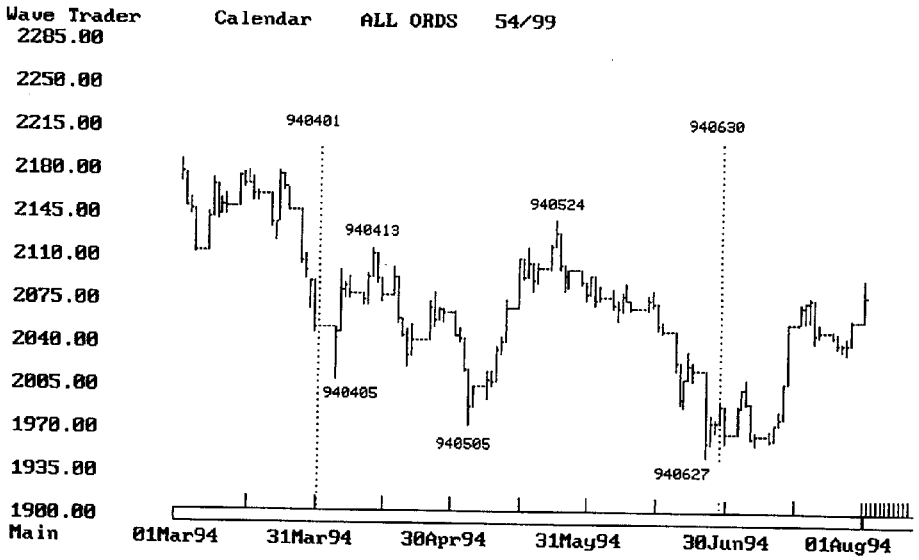
As the planets get further away from the Earth the synodical periods lessen to just over a year.

# 1994 First Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/ 1/1994 | Pluto | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 34333.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 3/ 1/1994 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 3/ 1/1994 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 34336.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 6/ 1/1994 | Saturn | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 34339.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 11/ 1/1994 | Neptune | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 34343.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 11/ 1/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 23: 0 |
| 12/ 1/1994 | Uranus | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 34345.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 16/ 1/1994 | Saturn | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34348.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 16/ 1/1994 | Pluto | 120.00 | trine | 34348.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 17/ 1/1994 | VENUS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 34349.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 19/ 1/1994 | Mercury | 144.07 | 2:3 - 144 | 34351.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 22/ 1/1994 | Mercury | 134.98 | 3:5 - 135 | 34354.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 22/ 1/1994 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 34355.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 26/ 1/1994 | Mercury | 120.01 | trine | 34358.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 27/ 1/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 13:15 |
| 1/ 2/1994 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 34365.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 5/ 2/1994 | Mercury | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34369.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 10/ 2/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 14:30 |
| 10/ 2/1994 | Jupiter | 72.02 | 1:4 - 72 | 34374.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 14/ 2/1994 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 34378.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 15/ 2/1994 | Neptune | 144.03 | 2:3 - 144 | 34379.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 16/ 2/1994 | Neptune | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34379.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 17/ 2/1994 | Uranus | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34381.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 20/ 2/1994 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 34383.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 21/ 2/1994 | Saturn | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 34385.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 23/ 2/1994 | Jupiter | 60.00 | sextile | 34387.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 24/ 2/1994 | Neptune | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 34388.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 25/ 2/1994 | Neptune | 134.97 | 3:5 - 135 | 34388.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 26/ 2/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 26/ 2/1994 | Uranus | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 34390.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 4/ 3/1994 | Pluto | 72.03 | 1:4 - 72 | 34396.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 12/ 3/1994 | Neptune | 119.99 | trine | 34403.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 12/ 3/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 13/ 3/1994 | Uranus | 120.02 | trine | 34405.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 15/ 3/1994 | Mercury | 59.91 | sextile | 34406.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 17/ 3/1994 | Pluto | 60.00 | sextile | 34408.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 20/ 3/1994 | VENUS | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 34411.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 20/ 3/1994 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 20: 0 |
| 22/ 3/1994 | Mercury | 71.90 | 1:4 - 72 | 34413.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 27/ 3/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 11:15 |
| 28/ 3/1994 | MARS | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34419.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 30/ 3/1994 | Saturn | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34422.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 31/ 3/1994 | Saturn | 143.98 | 2:3 - 144 | 34422.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 1/ 4/1994 | Mercury | 89.94 | square | 34423.54 | GMT 1:00 |

# 1994 Second Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 4/1994 | VENUS | 135.01 | 3:5 - 135 | 34426.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 9/ 4/1994 | Saturn | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 34431.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 11/ 4/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 0:15 |
| 11/ 4/1994 | Neptune | 90.03 | square | 34434.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 13/ 4/1994 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 34435.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 14/ 4/1994 | Mercury | 119.96 | trine | 34436.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 19/ 4/1994 | Mercury | 134.97 | 3:5 - 135 | 34441.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 22/ 4/1994 | Mercury | 143.95 | 2:3 - 144 | 34444.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 23/ 4/1994 | MARS | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 34445.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 25/ 4/1994 | Saturn | 120.02 | trine | 34447.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 25/ 4/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 20: 0 |
| 27/ 4/1994 | VENUS | 120.02 | trine | 34449.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 30/ 4/1994 | Neptune | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34452.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 30/ 4/1994 | Jupiter | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34452.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 30/ 4/1994 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 34452.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 2/ 5/1994 | Uranus | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34454.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 7/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 144.04 | 2:3 - 144 | 34459.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 9/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 134.93 | 3:5 - 135 | 34461.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 10/ 5/1994 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 17: 0 |
| 11/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 120.02 | trine | 34464.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 12/ 5/1994 | Neptune | 60.00 | sextile | 34465.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 14/ 5/1994 | Uranus | 60.02 | sextile | 34467.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 17/ 5/1994 | Pluto | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 34470.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 18/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 90.02 | square | 34470.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 23/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34475.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 25/ 5/1994 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 3:45 |
| 27/ 5/1994 | Mercury | 60.09 | sextile | 34479.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 27/ 5/1994 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 34479.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 6/ 6/1994 | MARS | 120.02 | trine | 34489.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 9/ 6/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 8:15 |
| 11/ 6/1994 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 34495.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 15/ 6/1994 | Saturn | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34499.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 21/ 6/1994 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 14: 0 |
| 23/ 6/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 11:45 |
| 25/ 6/1994 | Mercury | 0.07 | CONJUNCT | 34508.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 28/ 6/1994 | Saturn | 60.02 | sextile | 34512.33 | GMT 20:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS 54/99
2285.00
2250.00
2215.00
2180.00
2145.00
2110.00
2075.00
2040.00
2005.00
1970.00
1935.00
1900.00
Main
940401
940413
940405
940505
940524
940627
940630
01Mar94
31Mar94
30Apr94
31May94
30Jun94
01Aug94

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

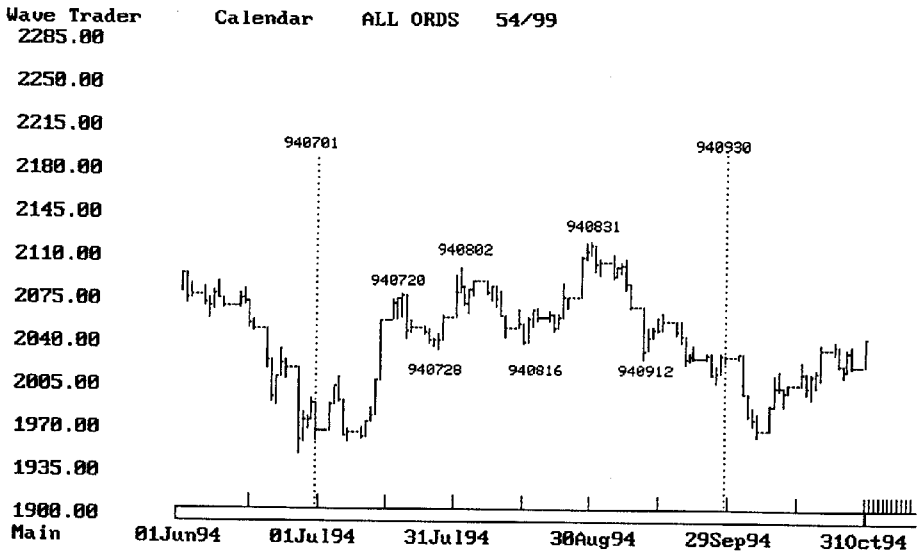
.....

.....

.....

# 1994 Third Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4/ 7/1994 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 7/ 7/1994 | Jupiter | 59.99 | sextile | 34520.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 8/ 7/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 21:30 |
| 9/ 7/1994 | VENUS | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34522.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 14/ 7/1994 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 34528.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 17/ 7/1994 | Uranus | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 34530.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 19/ 7/1994 | Mercury | 59.92 | sextile | 34532.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 19/ 7/1994 | Pluto | 60.00 | sextile | 34533.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 21/ 7/1994 | Jupiter | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34534.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 22/ 7/1994 | Mercury | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34535.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 22/ 7/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 20:30 |
| 26/ 7/1994 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 34539.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 27/ 7/1994 | VENUS | 60.03 | sextile | 34541.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 1/ 8/1994 | Pluto | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34546.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 3/ 8/1994 | Mercury | 135.05 | 3:5 - 135 | 34548.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 5/ 8/1994 | Mercury | 143.91 | 2:3 - 144 | 34550.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 7/ 8/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 8:30 |
| 10/ 8/1994 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 34554.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 13/ 8/1994 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 34557.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 20/ 8/1994 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 34565.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 21/ 8/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 23/ 8/1994 | Mercury | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34567.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 24/ 8/1994 | MARS | 90.03 | square | 34568.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 26/ 8/1994 | Mercury | 135.06 | 3:5 - 135 | 34571.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 1/ 9/1994 | Saturn | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 34577.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 2/ 9/1994 | Mercury | 120.05 | trine | 34577.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 5/ 9/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 18:30 |
| 13/ 9/1994 | Jupiter | 119.98 | trine | 34588.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 15/ 9/1994 | Neptune | 60.01 | sextile | 34590.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 18/ 9/1994 | Uranus | 60.00 | sextile | 34593.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 18/ 9/1994 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 34593.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 19/ 9/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 20:15 |
| 20/ 9/1994 | Pluto | 120.01 | trine | 34596.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 23/ 9/1994 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 6: 0 |
| 27/ 9/1994 | Neptune | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 34603.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 27/ 9/1994 | Mercury | 72.07 | 1:4 - 72 | 34603.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 29/ 9/1994 | Jupiter | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 34605.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 30/ 9/1994 | Uranus | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34606.08 | GMT 14:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS 54/99
2285.00
2250.00
2215.00
2180.00
2145.00
2110.00
2075.00
2040.00
2005.00
1970.00
1935.00
1900.00
Main
940701
940930
940831
940802
940720
940728
940816
940912
01Jun94
01Jul94
31Jul94
30Aug94
29Sep94
31Oct94

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

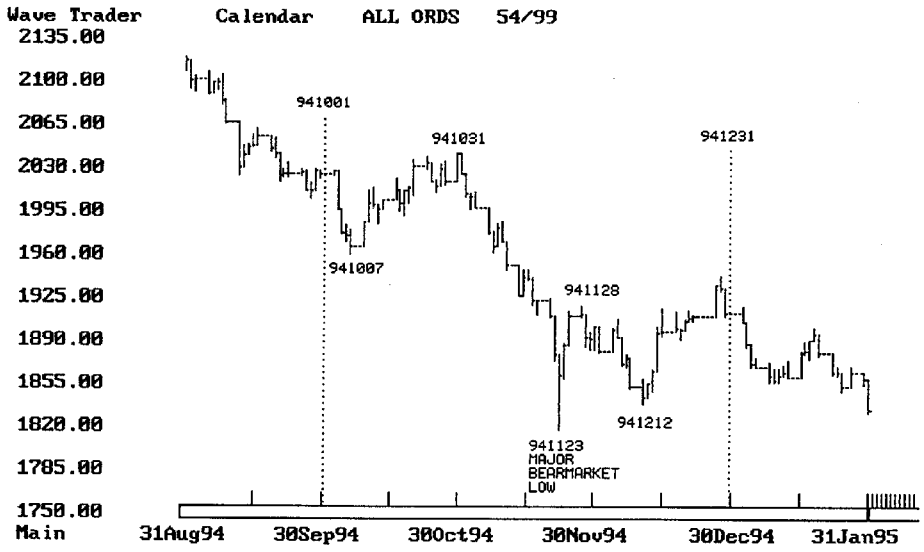
.....

.....

.....

# 1994 Fourth Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2/10/1994 | MARS | 72.02 | 1:4 - 72 | 34608.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 3/10/1994 | MARS | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34608.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 3/10/1994 | Mercury | 60.02 | sextile | 34608.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 5/10/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 3:45 |
| 6/10/1994 | Pluto | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 34611.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 9/10/1994 | Jupiter | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34615.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 15/10/1994 | Pluto | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34620.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 16/10/1994 | Neptune | 90.01 | square | 34621.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 19/10/1994 | Uranus | 89.97 | square | 34624.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 19/10/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 21/10/1994 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 34626.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 27/10/1994 | MARS | 60.02 | sextile | 34632.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 1/11/1994 | Mercury | 60.06 | sextile | 34638.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 2/11/1994 | VENUS | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 34639.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 3/11/1994 | VENUS | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34639.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 3/11/1994 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 13:30 |
| 3/11/1994 | Saturn | 59.98 | sextile | 34640.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 4/11/1994 | Mercury | 71.94 | 1:4 - 72 | 34640.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 8/11/1994 | Mercury | 89.93 | square | 34644.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 15/11/1994 | Neptune | 119.99 | trine | 34651.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 16/11/1994 | Saturn | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34652.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 16/11/1994 | Mercury | 119.98 | trine | 34652.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 17/11/1994 | Jupiter | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 34654.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 18/11/1994 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 6:45 |
| 18/11/1994 | Uranus | 120.00 | trine | 34654.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 20/11/1994 | Pluto | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 34656.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 21/11/1994 | Mercury | 134.95 | 3:5 - 135 | 34657.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 25/11/1994 | Mercury | 143.96 | 2:3 - 144 | 34661.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 30/11/1994 | Neptune | 135.01 | 3:5 - 135 | 34666.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 2/12/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 23:45 |
| 3/12/1994 | | | New Moon | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 3/12/1994 | Uranus | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 34669.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 4/12/1994 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 34670.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 9/12/1994 | Neptune | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34675.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 12/12/1994 | Uranus | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 34678.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 14/12/1994 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 34680.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 18/12/1994 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 2: 0 |
| 22/12/1994 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 2: 0 |
| 26/12/1994 | Pluto | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34692.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 26/12/1994 | Jupiter | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34692.75 | GMT 6:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS 54/99
2135.00
2100.00
2065.00
2030.00
1995.00
1960.00
1925.00
1890.00
1855.00
1820.00
1785.00
1750.00
Main
941001
941007
941031
941123
MAJOR
BEARMARKET
LOW
941128
941212
941231
31Aug94
30Sep94
30Oct94
30Nov94
30Dec94
31Jan95

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

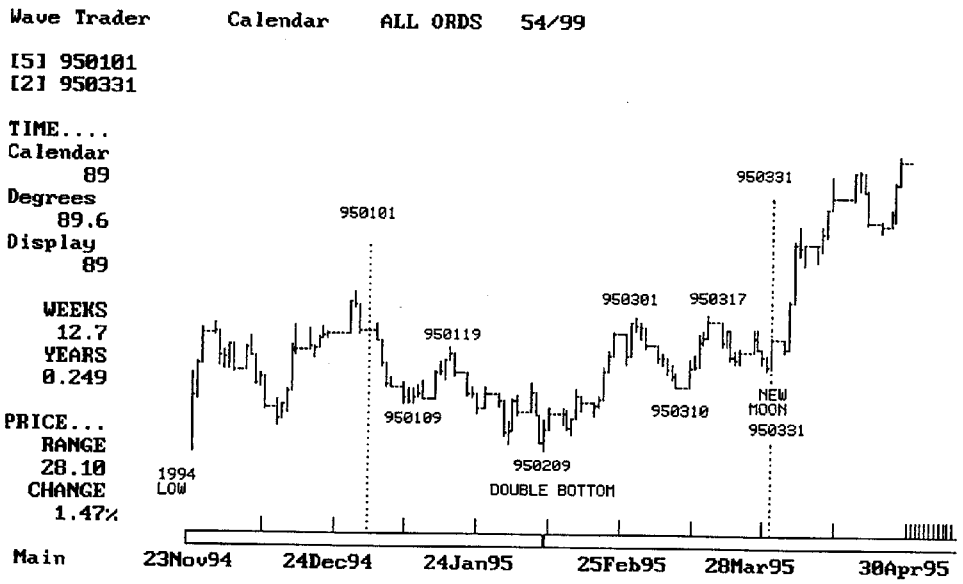
.....

.....

.....

# 1995 First Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 144.09 | 2:3 - 144 | 34698.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 1/ 1/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 10:45 |
| 3/ 1/1995 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 3/ 1/1995 | Saturn | 120.00 | trine | 34701.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 4/ 1/1995 | Pluto | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 34701.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 4/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 135.04 | 3:5 - 135 | 34702.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 4/ 1/1995 | Jupiter | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 34702.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 9/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 120.09 | trine | 34706.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 13/ 1/1995 | Neptune | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 34711.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 16/ 1/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 20:15 |
| 16/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 34714.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 17/ 1/1995 | Uranus | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 34714.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 18/ 1/1995 | Pluto | 120.03 | trine | 34716.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 19/ 1/1995 | Saturn | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 34716.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 20/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 71.93 | 1:4 - 72 | 34718.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 20/ 1/1995 | Jupiter | 119.99 | trine | 34718.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 23/ 1/1995 | Mercury | 59.97 | sextile | 34720.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 28/ 1/1995 | Saturn | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34725.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 30/ 1/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 22:45 |
| 3/ 2/1995 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34732.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 10/ 2/1995 | VENUS | 59.99 | sextile | 34739.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 12/ 2/1995 | MARS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 34740.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 15/ 2/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 17/ 2/1995 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 34746.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 18/ 2/1995 | Neptune | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34746.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 21/ 2/1995 | Jupiter | 90.01 | square | 34750.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 21/ 2/1995 | Uranus | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 34750.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 23/ 2/1995 | Mercury | 59.90 | sextile | 34751.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 27/ 2/1995 | Neptune | 135.03 | 3:5 - 135 | 34755.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 1/ 3/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 11:45 |
| 1/ 3/1995 | Mercury | 71.96 | 1:4 - 72 | 34757.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 2/ 3/1995 | VENUS | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34759.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 2/ 3/1995 | Uranus | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 34759.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 3/ 3/1995 | Uranus | 134.98 | 3:5 - 135 | 34759.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 6/ 3/1995 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 34762.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 7/ 3/1995 | Pluto | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 34764.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 11/ 3/1995 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 34768.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 13/ 3/1995 | Jupiter | 72.02 | 1:4 - 72 | 34769.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 14/ 3/1995 | Neptune | 120.02 | trine | 34770.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 17/ 3/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 1:15 |
| 18/ 3/1995 | Uranus | 120.00 | trine | 34774.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 19/ 3/1995 | Pluto | 60.03 | sextile | 34776.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 21/ 3/1995 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 2: 0 |
| 26/ 3/1995 | Jupiter | 60.00 | sextile | 34782.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 27/ 3/1995 | Mercury | 119.98 | trine | 34783.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 31/ 3/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 2: 0 |
| 1/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 134.93 | 3:5 - 135 | 34789.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 2/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 135.05 | 3:5 - 135 | 34789.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 2/ 4/1995 | VENUS | 89.99 | square | 34789.54 | GMT 1:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS
54/99
[5] 950101
[2] 950331
TIME....
Calendar
89
Degrees
89.6
Display
89
WEEKS
12.7
YEARS
0.249
PRICE...
RANGE
28.10
CHANGE
1.47%
Main
950101
950119
950109
950209
DOUBLE BOTTOM
950301
950317
950310
950331
NEW
MOON
950331
1994
LOW
23Nov94
24Dec94
24Jan95
25Feb95
28Mar95
30Apr95

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

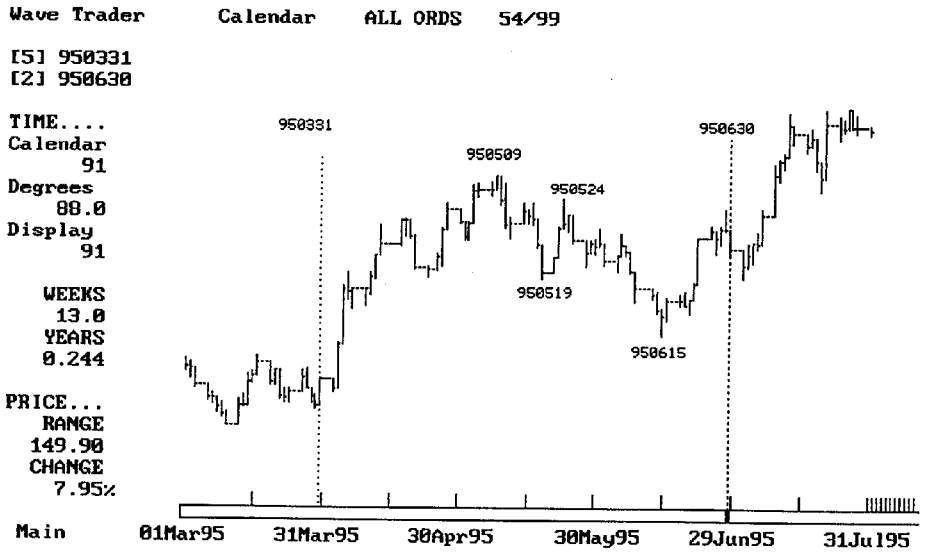
.....

.....

.....

# 1995 Second Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 143.94 | 2:3 - 144 | 34792.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 12/ 4/1995 | Saturn | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34800.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 14/ 4/1995 | Neptune | 90.01 | square | 34801.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 14/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 34802.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 15/ 4/1995 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 12:15 |
| 17/ 4/1995 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 34805.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 21/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 143.96 | 2:3 - 144 | 34809.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 22/ 4/1995 | Saturn | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 34809.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 23/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 135.08 | 3:5 - 135 | 34810.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 26/ 4/1995 | Mercury | 119.99 | trine | 34813.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 29/ 4/1995 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 17:30 |
| 2/ 5/1995 | Mercury | 90.07 | square | 34819.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 2/ 5/1995 | Neptune | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34820.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 6/ 5/1995 | Mercury | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34824.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 6/ 5/1995 | Uranus | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 34824.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 8/ 5/1995 | Saturn | 119.99 | trine | 34825.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 9/ 5/1995 | Mercury | 60.06 | sextile | 34827.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 14/ 5/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 21: 0 |
| 15/ 5/1995 | Neptune | 60.02 | sextile | 34832.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 19/ 5/1995 | Uranus | 60.01 | sextile | 34836.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 20/ 5/1995 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34838.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 21/ 5/1995 | VENUS | 119.99 | trine | 34838.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 29/ 5/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 9:15 |
| 1/ 6/1995 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 34849.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 2/ 6/1995 | MARS | 59.97 | sextile | 34851.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 5/ 6/1995 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 34853.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 9/ 6/1995 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 34857.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 13/ 6/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 4:15 |
| 13/ 6/1995 | VENUS | 134.98 | 3:5 - 135 | 34862.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 21/ 6/1995 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 20: 0 |
| 26/ 6/1995 | MARS | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 34875.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 27/ 6/1995 | VENUS | 143.99 | 2:3 - 144 | 34876.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 28/ 6/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 0:45 |
| 28/ 6/1995 | Saturn | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 34877.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 2/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 59.92 | sextile | 34880.75 | GMT 6:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS
54/99
[5] 950331
[2] 950630
TIME....
Calendar
91
Degrees
88.0
Display
91
WEEKS
13.0
YEARS
0.244
PRICE...
RANGE
149.90
CHANGE
7.95%
950331
950509
950524
950519
950615
950630
Main
01Mar95
31Mar95
30Apr95
30May95
29Jun95
31Jul95

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

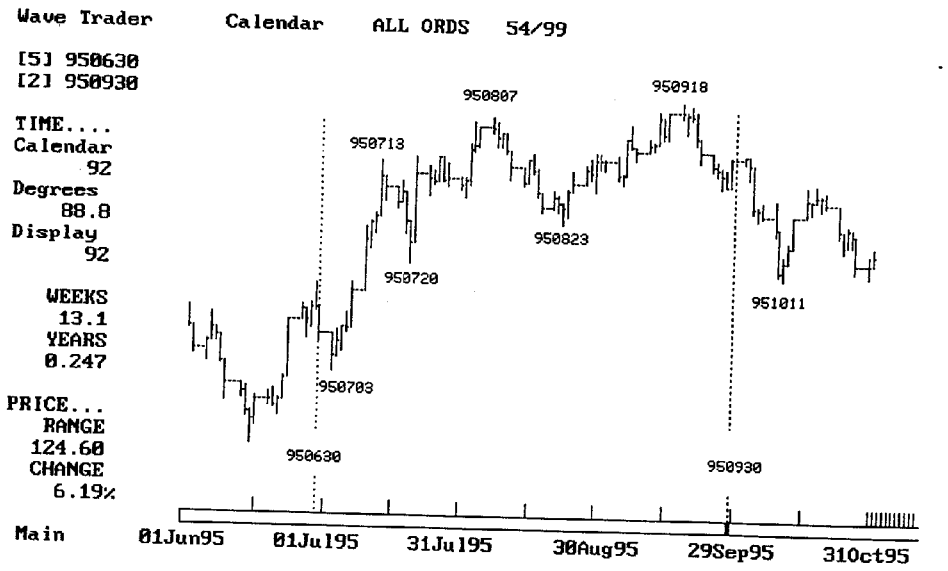
.....

.....

.....

# 1995 Third Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4/ 7/1995 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 5/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 71.91 | 1:4 - 72 | 34884.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 10/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 34888.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 11/ 7/1995 | Saturn | 60.03 | sextile | 34890.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 12/ 7/1995 | Saturn | 59.99 | sextile | 34890.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 12/ 7/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 11: 0 |
| 16/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 119.94 | trine | 34895.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 17/ 7/1995 | Neptune | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34895.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 19/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 135.09 | 3:5 - 135 | 34897.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 21/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34899.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 21/ 7/1995 | Uranus | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34900.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 22/ 7/1995 | Pluto | 60.00 | sextile | 34901.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 27/ 7/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 15: 0 |
| 28/ 7/1995 | Mercury | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 34906.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 3/ 8/1995 | MARS | 89.97 | square | 34912.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 4/ 8/1995 | Pluto | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 34913.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 5/ 8/1995 | Mercury | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34915.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 8/ 8/1995 | Mercury | 135.08 | 3:5 - 135 | 34918.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 8/ 8/1995 | Jupiter | 60.00 | sextile | 34918.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 10/ 8/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 18:30 |
| 14/ 8/1995 | Mercury | 120.00 | trine | 34923.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 20/ 8/1995 | VENUS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 34930.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 21/ 8/1995 | VENUS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 34930.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 22/ 8/1995 | Jupiter | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34932.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 23/ 8/1995 | Pluto | 89.98 | square | 34932.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 26/ 8/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 4:30 |
| 28/ 8/1995 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 34938.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 29/ 8/1995 | Mercury | 89.90 | square | 34938.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 7/ 9/1995 | Mercury | 72.06 | 1:4 - 72 | 34948.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 8/ 9/1995 | Mercury | 71.98 | 1:4 - 72 | 34948.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 9/ 9/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 3:45 |
| 11/ 9/1995 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 34952.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 14/ 9/1995 | Mercury | 60.02 | sextile | 34954.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 14/ 9/1995 | Saturn | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 34955.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 17/ 9/1995 | Neptune | 60.00 | sextile | 34958.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 22/ 9/1995 | Uranus | 59.99 | sextile | 34963.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 23/ 9/1995 | Pluto | 119.98 | trine | 34963.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 23/ 9/1995 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 24/ 9/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 16:45 |
| 30/ 9/1995 | Neptune | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34970.75 | GMT 6:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS 54/99
[5] 950630
[2] 950930
TIME....
Calendar
92
Degrees
88.8
Display
92
WEEKS
13.1
YEARS
0.247
PRICE...
RANGE
124.60
CHANGE
6.19%
Main
950807
950918
950713
950823
950720
951011
950703
950630
950930
01Jun95
01Jul95
31Jul95
30Aug95
29Sep95
31Oct95

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

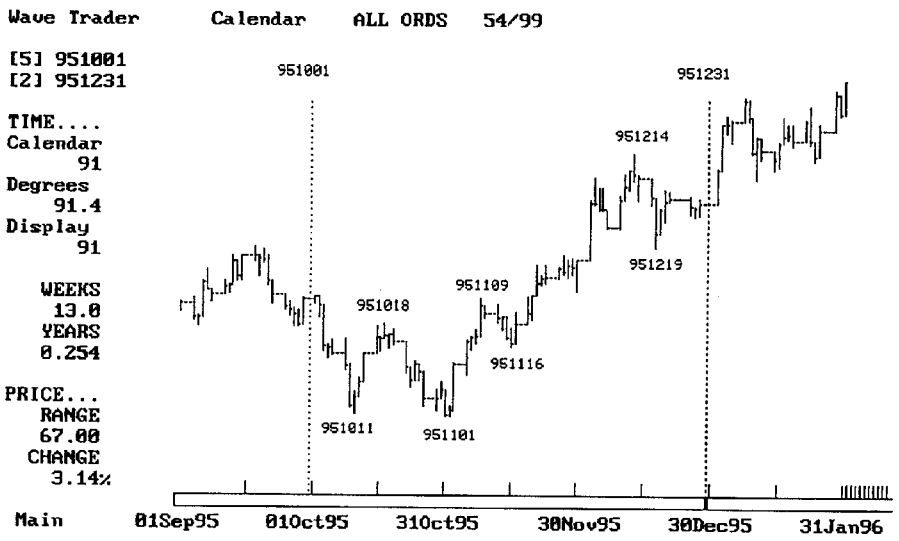
.....

.....

.....

# 1995 Fourth Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5/10/1995 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 34975.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 5/10/1995 | Uranus | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 34975.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 8/10/1995 | MARS | 119.98 | trine | 34979.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 8/10/1995 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 15:45 |
| 8/10/1995 | Pluto | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 34979.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 15/10/1995 | Jupiter | 120.00 | trine | 34985.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 16/10/1995 | VENUS | 144.02 | 2:3 - 144 | 34987.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 17/10/1995 | Mercury | 60.00 | sextile | 34987.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 18/10/1995 | Pluto | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 34988.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 18/10/1995 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 34989.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 19/10/1995 | Mercury | 72.08 | 1:4 - 72 | 34990.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 23/10/1995 | Mercury | 89.98 | square | 34993.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 23/10/1995 | Uranus | 89.99 | square | 34993.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 24/10/1995 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 4:30 |
| 30/10/1995 | Mercury | 119.97 | trine | 35000.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 31/10/1995 | Jupiter | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 35002.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 31/10/1995 | VENUS | 135.03 | 3:5 - 135 | 35002.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 3/11/1995 | Mercury | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 35004.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 6/11/1995 | Mercury | 143.95 | 2:3 - 144 | 35008.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 7/11/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 10/11/1995 | Jupiter | 143.98 | 2:3 - 144 | 35011.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 12/11/1995 | MARS | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 35013.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 16/11/1995 | Saturn | 59.99 | sextile | 35017.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 17/11/1995 | Neptune | 120.01 | trine | 35019.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 22/11/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 15:45 |
| 22/11/1995 | Uranus | 120.00 | trine | 35024.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 23/11/1995 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 35024.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 23/11/1995 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 35024.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 26/11/1995 | VENUS | 120.03 | trine | 35028.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 28/11/1995 | Saturn | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 35030.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 2/12/1995 | Neptune | 135.01 | 3:5 - 135 | 35034.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 3/12/1995 | MARS | 143.98 | 2:3 - 144 | 35034.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 7/12/1995 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 1:15 |
| 7/12/1995 | Uranus | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 35039.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 11/12/1995 | Neptune | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 35043.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 12/12/1995 | Mercury | 144.10 | 2:3 - 144 | 35044.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 13/12/1995 | Mercury | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 35044.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 16/12/1995 | Uranus | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 35048.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 16/12/1995 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 35048.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 17/12/1995 | Mercury | 135.09 | 3:5 - 135 | 35048.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 18/12/1995 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35050.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 22/12/1995 | | | New Moon | | GMT 2:15 |
| 22/12/1995 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 8: 0 |
| 22/12/1995 | Mercury | 120.10 | trine | 35054.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 28/12/1995 | Pluto | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 35060.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 31/12/1995 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 35063.17 | GMT 16:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS
54/99
[5] 951001
[2] 951231
TIME....
Calendar
91
Degrees
91.4
Display
91
WEEKS
13.0
YEARS
0.254
PRICE...
RANGE
67.00
CHANGE
3.14%
Main
951001
951231
951214
951219
951109
951018
951116
951011
951101
01Sep95
010ct95
310ct95
30Nov95
30Dec95
31Jan96

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

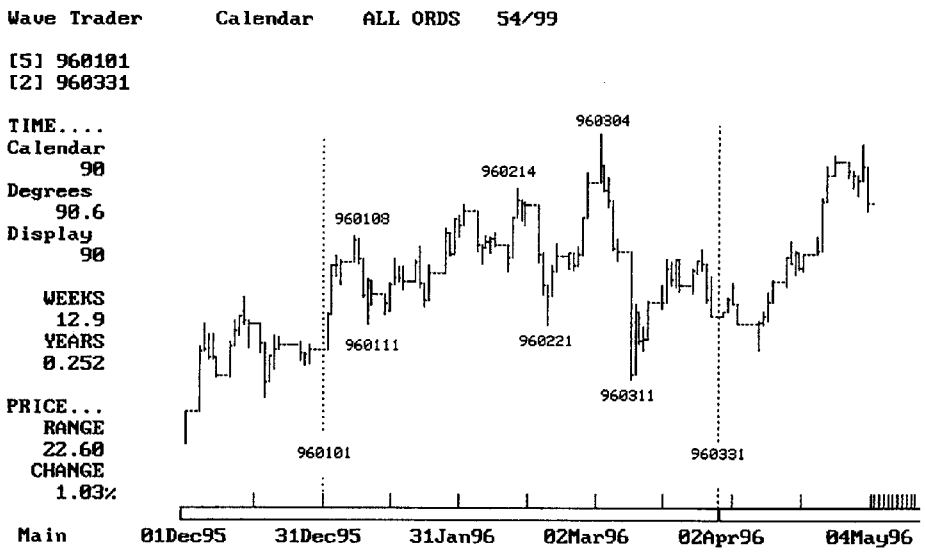
.....

.....

.....

# 1996 First Quarter

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/1996 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 4/ 1/1996 | Mercury | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 35067.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 5/ 1/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 20:30 |
| 6/ 1/1996 | Pluto | 134.99 | 3:5 - 135 | 35069.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 7/ 1/1996 | Mercury | 59.96 | sextile | 35069.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 16/ 1/1996 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35078.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 16/ 1/1996 | Saturn | 119.99 | trine | 35078.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 18/ 1/1996 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 35080.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 20/ 1/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 12:45 |
| 21/ 1/1996 | Uranus | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 35083.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 21/ 1/1996 | Pluto | 120.02 | trine | 35084.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 26/ 1/1996 | Jupiter | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 35088.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 31/ 1/1996 | Saturn | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 35094.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 4/ 2/1996 | Mercury | 59.93 | sextile | 35097.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 4/ 2/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 15:45 |
| 4/ 2/1996 | Jupiter | 135.01 | 3:5 - 135 | 35098.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 9/ 2/1996 | Mercury | 71.97 | 1:4 - 72 | 35103.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 9/ 2/1996 | Saturn | 143.98 | 2:3 - 144 | 35103.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 17/ 2/1996 | VENUS | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 35111.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 18/ 2/1996 | Mercury | 89.93 | square | 35112.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 18/ 2/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 23:30 |
| 20/ 2/1996 | Pluto | 90.03 | square | 35113.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 20/ 2/1996 | Neptune | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 35114.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 21/ 2/1996 | Jupiter | 120.02 | trine | 35114.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 26/ 2/1996 | Uranus | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 35119.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 29/ 2/1996 | Neptune | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 35123.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 4/ 3/1996 | MARS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35127.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 5/ 3/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 9:15 |
| 6/ 3/1996 | Uranus | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 35128.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 6/ 3/1996 | Mercury | 119.97 | trine | 35129.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 8/ 3/1996 | VENUS | 60.02 | sextile | 35130.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 9/ 3/1996 | Pluto | 71.99 | 1:4 - 72 | 35131.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 13/ 3/1996 | Mercury | 134.91 | 3:5 - 135 | 35136.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 15/ 3/1996 | Neptune | 120.01 | trine | 35138.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 17/ 3/1996 | Mercury | 144.01 | 2:3 - 144 | 35139.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 17/ 3/1996 | Saturn | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35140.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 19/ 3/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 10:30 |
| 20/ 3/1996 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 8: 0 |
| 21/ 3/1996 | Uranus | 120.01 | trine | 35144.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 21/ 3/1996 | Pluto | 60.00 | sextile | 35144.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 24/ 3/1996 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 35147.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 28/ 3/1996 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 35150.79 | GMT 7:00 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS
54/99
[5] 960101
[2] 960331
TIME....
Calendar
90
Degrees
90.6
Display
90
WEEKS
12.9
YEARS
0.252
PRICE...
RANGE
22.60
CHANGE
1.03%
960304
960214
960108
960111
960221
960311
960101
960331
Main
01Dec95
31Dec95
31Jan96
02Mar96
02Apr96
04May96

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

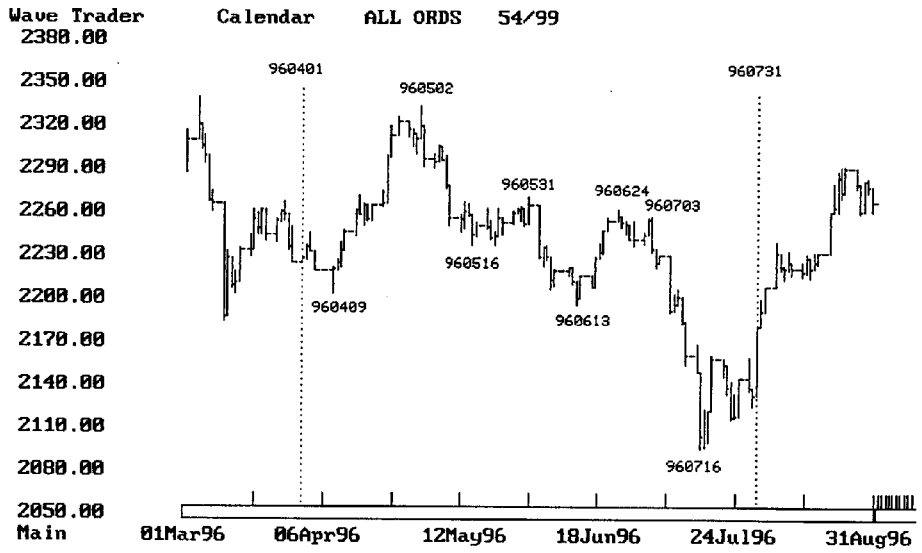
.....

.....

.....

# 1996 April - July

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4/ 4/1996 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 0:15 |
| 6/ 4/1996 | Mercury | 135.04 | 3:5 - 135 | 35160.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 9/ 4/1996 | Mercury | 120.00 | trine | 35163.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 13/ 4/1996 | Jupiter | 72.00 | 1:4 - 72 | 35167.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 15/ 4/1996 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 35168.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 15/ 4/1996 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 35169.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 17/ 4/1996 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 22:45 |
| 19/ 4/1996 | Mercury | 72.02 | 1:4 - 72 | 35172.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 21/ 4/1996 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 35174.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 22/ 4/1996 | Mercury | 59.96 | sextile | 35175.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 24/ 4/1996 | Saturn | 144.00 | 2:3 - 144 | 35178.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 27/ 4/1996 | Jupiter | 60.01 | sextile | 35180.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 3/ 5/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 4/ 5/1996 | Neptune | 72.02 | 1:4 - 72 | 35187.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 4/ 5/1996 | Saturn | 135.01 | 3:5 - 135 | 35187.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 10/ 5/1996 | Uranus | 72.01 | 1:4 - 72 | 35193.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 15/ 5/1996 | Mercury | 0.09 | CONJUNCT | 35198.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 16/ 5/1996 | Neptune | 60.01 | sextile | 35200.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 17/ 5/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 11:30 |
| 20/ 5/1996 | Saturn | 120.03 | trine | 35203.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 22/ 5/1996 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 35205.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 22/ 5/1996 | Uranus | 60.02 | sextile | 35206.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 1/ 6/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 21: 0 |
| 10/ 6/1996 | MARS | 144.03 | 2:3 - 144 | 35224.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 10/ 6/1996 | VENUS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 35225.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 13/ 6/1996 | Mercury | 60.01 | sextile | 35228.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 16/ 6/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 1:30 |
| 17/ 6/1996 | Mercury | 72.03 | 1:4 - 72 | 35232.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 21/ 6/1996 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 2: 0 |
| 21/ 6/1996 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 35236.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 23/ 6/1996 | Mercury | 89.98 | square | 35237.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 29/ 6/1996 | Mercury | 119.91 | trine | 35244.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 1/ 7/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 4: 0 |
| 2/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 135.06 | 3:5 - 135 | 35247.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 2/ 7/1996 | MARS | 135.02 | 3:5 - 135 | 35247.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 3/ 7/1996 | MARS | 135.00 | 3:5 - 135 | 35247.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 4/ 7/1996 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 4/ 7/1996 | Jupiter | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 35248.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 4/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 144.05 | 2:3 - 144 | 35249.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 11/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 35255.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 11/ 7/1996 | Saturn | 72.03 | 1:4 - 72 | 35255.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 15/ 7/1996 | | | New Moon | | GMT 16: 0 |
| 18/ 7/1996 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 35263.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 19/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 144.09 | 2:3 - 144 | 35263.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 21/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 135.10 | 3:5 - 135 | 35266.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 24/ 7/1996 | Saturn | 60.01 | sextile | 35268.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 24/ 7/1996 | Pluto | 59.98 | sextile | 35269.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 25/ 7/1996 | Uranus | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 35269.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 26/ 7/1996 | Mercury | 120.05 | trine | 35270.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 30/ 7/1996 | | | Full Moon | | GMT 10:45 |


Wave Trader
Calendar
ALL ORDS 54/99
2380.00
2350.00
2320.00
2290.00
2260.00
2230.00
2200.00
2170.00
2140.00
2110.00
2080.00
2050.00
Main
960401
960502
960731
960531
960624
960703
960516
960409
960613
960716
01Mar96
06Apr96
12May96
18Jun96
24Jul96
31Aug96

Notes:-

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Summary

My purpose for explaining the planetary cycles in such detail has not been to reach any undeniable conclusions, simply to put the facts forward in the manner I have been observing for the past 10 years. My experience is that planetary positions have some bearing on natural cyclic events, yet because of the number of planetary events it remains difficult for me to forecast a market reversal of trend based on such criteria.

During the 16 years I have been in this business I have met many financial astrologers and Astro-economic analysts, each provides a good argument as to why they can forecast market changes of trend with their techniques. On the whole most of them were or are newsletter writers, not traders.

I have found from past experience that it doesn't pay me to get to carried away with the importance of planetary cycles. I already have the mathematical approach taken from the actual market history that works so well.

It has taken me considerable time researching, various markets at their high and low dates, for evidence I could apply in a trading plan. At present I don't believe I can use this information reliably, it still retains a random appearance to me. Yet it is possible these cycles are at work in an oblique manner, which is difficult to understand.

Any student of time analysis requires to be aware, I hope what I have provided here does that at least.

My advice is to do your own research and arrive at your own conclusions.

## Helio-centric SQUARE Aspects for 1998 - 2010

As an assistance I am including tables from 1998 through to 2010. But to save space and confusion I am not including new moon or full moon dates, these are easy to monitor. The tables list 0° - Conjunct, 90° - Square, 180° - Opposition, solar eclipse and lunar eclipse. If you wish to know 60°, 72°, 120° and 144° aspects the CycleTrader software will allow it.

For the best part, this information should be enough for you to reach a conclusion as to the value of these cycle dates.

# 1998

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/1998 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 9/ 1/1998 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 35802.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 10/ 1/1998 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 35804.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 16/ 1/1998 | VENUS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 35809.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 19/ 1/1998 | Neptune | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 35813.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 28/ 1/1998 | Uranus | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35822.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 22/ 2/1998 | Mercury | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35846.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 23/ 2/1998 | Jupiter | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 35847.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 24/ 2/1998 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 35849.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 26/ 2/1998 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 17:15 |
| 13/ 3/1998 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 4:15 |
| 15/ 3/1998 | Mercury | 89.98 | square | 35867.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 20/ 3/1998 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 6/ 4/1998 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 35890.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 13/ 4/1998 | Saturn | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 35897.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 20/ 4/1998 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 35904.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 30/ 4/1998 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 35913.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 12/ 5/1998 | MARS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 35926.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 20/ 5/1998 | Mercury | 89.98 | square | 35933.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 28/ 5/1998 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 35941.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 4/ 6/1998 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 35948.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 10/ 6/1998 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 35954.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 12/ 6/1998 | VENUS | 89.98 | square | 35956.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 21/ 6/1998 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 14: 0 |
| 1/ 7/1998 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 35976.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 4/ 7/1998 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 19/ 7/1998 | Saturn | 90.02 | square | 35994.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 23/ 7/1998 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 35998.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 3/ 8/1998 | Uranus | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36008.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 13/ 8/1998 | Mercury | 0.07 | CONJUNCT | 36019.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 14/ 8/1998 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 36019.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 22/ 8/1998 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 1:45 |
| 30/ 8/1998 | Pluto | 89.99 | square | 36036.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 5/ 9/1998 | Mercury | 89.96 | square | 36041.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 6/ 9/1998 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 11:30 |
| 16/ 9/1998 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36052.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 23/ 9/1998 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 5: 0 |
| 25/ 9/1998 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 36062.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 23/10/1998 | Saturn | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 36090.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 24/10/1998 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 36091.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 30/10/1998 | VENUS | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 36096.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 4/11/1998 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 36101.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 8/11/1998 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 36106.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 14/11/1998 | MARS | 90.03 | square | 36111.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 30/11/1998 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 36127.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 1/12/1998 | Mercury | 0.06 | CONJUNCT | 36129.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 22/12/1998 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 22/12/1998 | Mercury | 90.00 | square | 36149.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 24/12/1998 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 36151.63 | GMT 3:00 |

# 1999

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/1999 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 22/ 1/1999 | Neptune | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36180.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 23/ 1/1999 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 36182.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 31/ 1/1999 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 15:45 |
| 2/ 2/1999 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 36191.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 4/ 2/1999 | Mercury | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36193.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 16/ 2/1999 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 6:30 |
| 27/ 2/1999 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 36216.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 19/ 3/1999 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36237.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 21/ 3/1999 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 1/ 4/1999 | Jupiter | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36249.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 2/ 4/1999 | VENUS | 90.03 | square | 36250.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 23/ 4/1999 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 36271.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 24/ 4/1999 | MARS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36273.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 27/ 4/1999 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36275.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 2/ 5/1999 | Mercury | 89.91 | square | 36280.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 4/ 5/1999 | Uranus | 90.02 | square | 36283.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 25/ 5/1999 | Mercury | 179.95 | OPPOSITION | 36304.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 30/ 5/1999 | Pluto | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36309.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 14/ 6/1999 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 36323.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 21/ 6/1999 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 4/ 7/1999 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 13/ 7/1999 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 36352.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 26/ 7/1999 | Neptune | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 36365.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 26/ 7/1999 | Mercury | 0.07 | CONJUNCT | 36366.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 28/ 7/1999 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 11:30 |
| 3/ 8/1999 | Saturn | 90.03 | square | 36373.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 7/ 8/1999 | Uranus | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 36378.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 11/ 8/1999 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 11: 0 |
| 20/ 8/1999 | VENUS | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 36390.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 20/ 8/1999 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 36391.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 2/ 9/1999 | Pluto | 89.99 | square | 36404.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 8/ 9/1999 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 36410.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 23/ 9/1999 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 11: 0 |
| 20/10/1999 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 36452.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 23/10/1999 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36455.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 27/10/1999 | Neptune | 90.01 | square | 36458.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 6/11/1999 | Saturn | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36469.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 8/11/1999 | Uranus | 89.98 | square | 36471.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 15/11/1999 | Mercury | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36478.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 2/12/1999 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 36495.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 4/12/1999 | MARS | 89.98 | square | 36496.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 4/12/1999 | Mercury | 89.91 | square | 36497.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 22/12/1999 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 7: 0 |

# 2000

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2000 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 14/ 1/2000 | VENUS | 89.98 | square | 36538.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 16/ 1/2000 | Mercury | 179.91 | OPPOSITION | 36539.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 21/ 1/2000 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 4:30 |
| 24/ 1/2000 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 36548.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 29/ 1/2000 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 36552.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 5/ 2/2000 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 13: 0 |
| 6/ 2/2000 | Uranus | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 36560.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 6/ 2/2000 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 36561.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 11/ 2/2000 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 36566.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 1/ 3/2000 | Pluto | 90.02 | square | 36584.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 1/ 3/2000 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36585.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 20/ 3/2000 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 12/ 4/2000 | Mercury | 89.96 | square | 36626.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 24/ 4/2000 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 36639.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 8/ 5/2000 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 36652.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 8/ 5/2000 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 36652.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 9/ 5/2000 | Mercury | 179.91 | OPPOSITION | 36653.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 10/ 5/2000 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36655.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 27/ 5/2000 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 36672.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 1/ 6/2000 | Pluto | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36677.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 11/ 6/2000 | VENUS | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 36686.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 21/ 6/2000 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 1/ 7/2000 | MARS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36707.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 4/ 7/2000 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 6/ 7/2000 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 36711.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 16/ 7/2000 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 14:15 |
| 27/ 7/2000 | Neptune | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 36733.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 3/ 8/2000 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 36740.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 11/ 8/2000 | Uranus | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36747.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 16/ 8/2000 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 36753.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 19/ 8/2000 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 36756.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 22/ 8/2000 | Mercury | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 36758.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 4/ 9/2000 | Pluto | 89.98 | square | 36771.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 22/ 9/2000 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 17: 0 |
| 29/ 9/2000 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 36797.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 28/10/2000 | Neptune | 89.97 | square | 36826.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 30/10/2000 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 36827.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 30/10/2000 | VENUS | 90.01 | square | 36827.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 11/11/2000 | Uranus | 89.98 | square | 36840.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 17/11/2000 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 36845.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 19/11/2000 | Saturn | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36848.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 28/11/2000 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 36856.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 4/12/2000 | Pluto | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 36862.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 16/12/2000 | MARS | 90.02 | square | 36875.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 17/12/2000 | MARS | 90.00 | square | 36875.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 21/12/2000 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 13: 0 |
| 25/12/2000 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 17:15 |
| 25/12/2000 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 36884.25 | GMT 18:00 |

# 2001

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2/ 1/2001 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 9/ 1/2001 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 20:15 |
| 25/ 1/2001 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 36915.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 26/ 1/2001 | Neptune | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 36915.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 9/ 2/2001 | Uranus | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 36930.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 13/ 2/2001 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 36933.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 19/ 2/2001 | Saturn | 89.97 | square | 36939.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 3/ 3/2001 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 36952.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 5/ 3/2001 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 36953.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 20/ 3/2001 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 13: 0 |
| 23/ 3/2001 | Mercury | 89.96 | square | 36971.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 30/ 3/2001 | VENUS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 36978.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 23/ 4/2001 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 37002.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 27/ 4/2001 | Neptune | 90.01 | square | 37006.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 11/ 5/2001 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 37020.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 12/ 5/2001 | Uranus | 89.99 | square | 37022.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 25/ 5/2001 | Saturn | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37035.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 4/ 6/2001 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 37044.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 13/ 6/2001 | MARS | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 37054.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 14/ 6/2001 | Jupiter | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 37055.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 16/ 6/2001 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 37057.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 21/ 6/2001 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 21/ 6/2001 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 4/ 7/2001 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 5/ 7/2001 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 15:15 |
| 19/ 7/2001 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 37089.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 30/ 7/2001 | Neptune | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 37100.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 5/ 8/2001 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 37107.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 15/ 8/2001 | Uranus | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 37117.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 20/ 8/2001 | VENUS | 89.97 | square | 37121.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 31/ 8/2001 | Saturn | 90.02 | square | 37132.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 6/ 9/2001 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 37139.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 9/ 9/2001 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 37141.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 25/ 9/2001 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 37157.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 14/10/2001 | Mercury | 0.06 | CONJUNCT | 37176.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 31/10/2001 | Neptune | 89.99 | square | 37193.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 1/11/2001 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 37194.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 16/11/2001 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 37209.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 3/12/2001 | Saturn | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 37227.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 4/12/2001 | Mercury | 179.90 | OPPOSITION | 37228.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 7/12/2001 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 37230.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 14/12/2001 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 20:30 |
| 21/12/2001 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 30/12/2001 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 10:30 |

# 2002

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/ 1/2002 | Jupiter | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37255.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 3/ 1/2002 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 9/ 1/2002 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 37264.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 14/ 1/2002 | VENUS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 37268.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 27/ 1/2002 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 37282.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 28/ 1/2002 | Neptune | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 37283.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 6/ 2/2002 | MARS | 89.99 | square | 37291.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 13/ 2/2002 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 37299.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 2/ 3/2002 | Mercury | 89.94 | square | 37315.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 5/ 3/2002 | Saturn | 89.99 | square | 37319.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 6/ 3/2002 | Pluto | 90.03 | square | 37319.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 20/ 3/2002 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 7/ 4/2002 | Mercury | 179.96 | OPPOSITION | 37351.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 8/ 4/2002 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 37353.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 25/ 4/2002 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 37369.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 29/ 4/2002 | Neptune | 90.02 | square | 37374.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 16/ 5/2002 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 37391.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 26/ 5/2002 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 27/ 5/2002 | Mercury | 0.08 | CONJUNCT | 37401.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 7/ 6/2002 | Pluto | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37412.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 9/ 6/2002 | Saturn | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 37414.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 9/ 6/2002 | VENUS | 90.00 | square | 37415.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 10/ 6/2002 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 23:45 |
| 11/ 6/2002 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 21/ 6/2002 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 13: 0 |
| 3/ 7/2002 | Mercury | 90.07 | square | 37438.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 4/ 7/2002 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 20/ 7/2002 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37455.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 21/ 7/2002 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 37456.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 2/ 8/2002 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37468.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 10/ 8/2002 | MARS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37477.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 20/ 8/2002 | Uranus | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 37486.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 20/ 8/2002 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 37486.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 9/ 9/2002 | Pluto | 89.98 | square | 37507.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 15/ 9/2002 | Saturn | 90.02 | square | 37512.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 23/ 9/2002 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 4: 0 |
| 27/ 9/2002 | Mercury | 0.08 | CONJUNCT | 37525.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 16/10/2002 | Mercury | 89.96 | square | 37543.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 29/10/2002 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 37556.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 31/10/2002 | VENUS | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 37558.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 2/11/2002 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 37561.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 14/11/2002 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 37572.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 20/11/2002 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 1:30 |
| 20/11/2002 | Uranus | 89.97 | square | 37578.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 4/12/2002 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 7:30 |
| 9/12/2002 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 37598.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 17/12/2002 | Saturn | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 37606.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 22/12/2002 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 24/12/2002 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 37612.79 | GMT 7:00 |

# 2003

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2003 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 11/ 1/2003 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37631.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 21/ 1/2003 | MARS | 90.03 | square | 37641.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 31/ 1/2003 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37650.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 2/ 2/2003 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 37652.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 9/ 2/2003 | Mercury | 89.98 | square | 37660.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 17/ 2/2003 | Uranus | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 37668.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 8/ 3/2003 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 37687.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 20/ 3/2003 | Saturn | 89.99 | square | 37698.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 21/ 3/2003 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 21/ 3/2003 | Mercury | 179.93 | OPPOSITION | 37700.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 22/ 3/2003 | Mercury | 179.91 | OPPOSITION | 37700.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 30/ 3/2003 | VENUS | 89.99 | square | 37709.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 9/ 4/2003 | Mercury | 90.08 | square | 37718.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 2/ 5/2003 | Neptune | 90.02 | square | 37741.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 7/ 5/2003 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 37746.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 12/ 5/2003 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 37751.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 16/ 5/2003 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 3:45 |
| 21/ 5/2003 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 37760.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 31/ 5/2003 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 4:15 |
| 9/ 6/2003 | Pluto | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 37780.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 16/ 6/2003 | Mercury | 90.00 | square | 37787.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 21/ 6/2003 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 24/ 6/2003 | Saturn | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 37795.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 4/ 7/2003 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 5/ 7/2003 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 37805.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 31/ 7/2003 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 37831.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 4/ 8/2003 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37836.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 18/ 8/2003 | VENUS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 37850.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 22/ 8/2003 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37853.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 24/ 8/2003 | Uranus | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 37855.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 28/ 8/2003 | MARS | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 37860.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 11/ 9/2003 | Mercury | 0.10 | CONJUNCT | 37873.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 12/ 9/2003 | Pluto | 89.98 | square | 37874.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 23/ 9/2003 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 10: 0 |
| 29/ 9/2003 | Saturn | 89.99 | square | 37892.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 30/ 9/2003 | Mercury | 89.91 | square | 37892.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 25/10/2003 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 37917.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 5/11/2003 | Neptune | 89.98 | square | 37928.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 9/11/2003 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 1: 0 |
| 23/11/2003 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 22:45 |
| 24/11/2003 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 37948.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 29/11/2003 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 37952.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 7/12/2003 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 37960.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 12/12/2003 | Pluto | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 37965.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 22/12/2003 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 27/12/2003 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 37980.54 | GMT 1:00 |

# 2004

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2004 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 15/ 1/2004 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 38000.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 20/ 1/2004 | Mercury | 89.92 | square | 38005.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 21/ 1/2004 | Mercury | 90.10 | square | 38005.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 2/ 2/2004 | Neptune | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38017.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 22/ 2/2004 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 38037.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 4/ 3/2004 | Mercury | 179.95 | OPPOSITION | 38048.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 4/ 3/2004 | Jupiter | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 38048.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 10/ 3/2004 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 38054.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 20/ 3/2004 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 6: 0 |
| 23/ 3/2004 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 38068.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 24/ 3/2004 | MARS | 89.99 | square | 38069.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 2/ 4/2004 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 38078.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 17/ 4/2004 | Mercury | 0.09 | CONJUNCT | 38092.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 19/ 4/2004 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 13:15 |
| 3/ 5/2004 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 38109.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 4/ 5/2004 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 20:45 |
| 24/ 5/2004 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 38130.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 29/ 5/2004 | Mercury | 89.92 | square | 38135.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 8/ 6/2004 | VENUS | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 38144.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 11/ 6/2004 | Pluto | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38147.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 12/ 6/2004 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 38148.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 18/ 6/2004 | Mercury | 179.95 | OPPOSITION | 38155.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 21/ 6/2004 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 4/ 7/2004 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 8/ 7/2004 | Saturn | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 38175.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 11/ 7/2004 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 38178.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 6/ 8/2004 | Neptune | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 38203.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 23/ 8/2004 | Mercury | 0.09 | CONJUNCT | 38221.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 27/ 8/2004 | Uranus | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38225.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 13/ 9/2004 | Pluto | 89.98 | square | 38242.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 13/ 9/2004 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 38242.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 15/ 9/2004 | MARS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 38244.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 22/ 9/2004 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 38250.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 22/ 9/2004 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 16: 0 |
| 5/10/2004 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38264.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 13/10/2004 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 38271.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 14/10/2004 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 2:45 |
| 28/10/2004 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 3: 0 |
| 29/10/2004 | VENUS | 89.98 | square | 38287.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 6/11/2004 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 38296.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 18/11/2004 | Mercury | 90.08 | square | 38308.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 27/11/2004 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 38317.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 10/12/2004 | Mercury | 0.08 | CONJUNCT | 38329.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 13/12/2004 | Pluto | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 38333.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 21/12/2004 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 28/12/2004 | Jupiter | 89.99 | square | 38347.58 | GMT 2:00 |

# 2005

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/ 1/2005 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 38351.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 2/ 1/2005 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 13/ 1/2005 | Saturn | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38364.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 3/ 2/2005 | Neptune | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38385.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 14/ 2/2005 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 38395.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 25/ 2/2005 | Uranus | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 38406.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 6/ 3/2005 | MARS | 90.03 | square | 38415.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 8/ 3/2005 | Mercury | 90.00 | square | 38417.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 12/ 3/2005 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 38422.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 20/ 3/2005 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 29/ 3/2005 | Mercury | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38439.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 31/ 3/2005 | VENUS | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38440.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 3/ 4/2005 | Jupiter | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38444.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 8/ 4/2005 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 20:30 |
| 17/ 4/2005 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 38457.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 24/ 4/2005 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 10:15 |
| 6/ 5/2005 | Neptune | 90.02 | square | 38476.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 12/ 5/2005 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 38482.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 29/ 5/2005 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 38499.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 3/ 6/2005 | Mercury | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 38504.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 13/ 6/2005 | Pluto | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 38515.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 21/ 6/2005 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 6: 0 |
| 23/ 6/2005 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 38525.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 4/ 7/2005 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 13/ 7/2005 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 38545.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 23/ 7/2005 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 38555.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 5/ 8/2005 | Mercury | 0.06 | CONJUNCT | 38568.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 6/ 8/2005 | Mercury | 0.06 | CONJUNCT | 38568.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 8/ 8/2005 | Neptune | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 38571.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 16/ 8/2005 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 38579.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 29/ 8/2005 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 38591.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 1/ 9/2005 | Uranus | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 38594.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 16/ 9/2005 | Pluto | 89.97 | square | 38609.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 18/ 9/2005 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 38611.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 22/ 9/2005 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 22: 0 |
| 3/10/2005 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 10:30 |
| 17/10/2005 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 22/10/2005 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 38646.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 27/10/2005 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 38651.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 31/10/2005 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 38654.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 7/11/2005 | MARS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38661.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 9/11/2005 | Neptune | 89.97 | square | 38663.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 24/11/2005 | Mercury | 0.09 | CONJUNCT | 38679.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 1/12/2005 | Uranus | 89.98 | square | 38686.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 14/12/2005 | Mercury | 89.91 | square | 38698.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 15/12/2005 | Pluto | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 38700.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 16/12/2005 | Pluto | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38700.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 21/12/2005 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 18: 0 |

# 2006

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2006 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 13/ 1/2006 | VENUS | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 38729.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 14/ 1/2006 | VENUS | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 38729.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 26/ 1/2006 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 38742.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 26/ 1/2006 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38742.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 27/ 1/2006 | Saturn | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 38743.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 6/ 2/2006 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 38752.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 20/ 2/2006 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 38767.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 1/ 3/2006 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 38775.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 12/ 3/2006 | Mercury | 0.10 | CONJUNCT | 38786.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 14/ 3/2006 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 23:15 |
| 15/ 3/2006 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 38789.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 20/ 3/2006 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 18: 0 |
| 29/ 3/2006 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 10:15 |
| 23/ 4/2006 | Mercury | 89.92 | square | 38829.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 1/ 5/2006 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 38837.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 3/ 5/2006 | MARS | 89.98 | square | 38838.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 4/ 5/2006 | Jupiter | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 38840.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 8/ 5/2006 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 38844.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 18/ 5/2006 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 38854.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 2/ 6/2006 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 38868.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 6/ 6/2006 | Mercury | 90.01 | square | 38873.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 9/ 6/2006 | VENUS | 89.98 | square | 38876.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 10/ 6/2006 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 38876.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 16/ 6/2006 | Pluto | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 38882.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 21/ 6/2006 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 4/ 7/2006 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 18/ 7/2006 | Mercury | 0.10 | CONJUNCT | 38914.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 7/ 8/2006 | Saturn | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 38935.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 11/ 8/2006 | Neptune | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 38938.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 13/ 8/2006 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 38941.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 14/ 8/2006 | Jupiter | 89.98 | square | 38942.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 1/ 9/2006 | Mercury | 179.91 | OPPOSITION | 38959.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 5/ 9/2006 | Uranus | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 38963.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 7/ 9/2006 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 19: 0 |
| 18/ 9/2006 | Pluto | 89.99 | square | 38977.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 22/ 9/2006 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 11:30 |
| 11/10/2006 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 39000.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 23/10/2006 | MARS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39011.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 27/10/2006 | VENUS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39016.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 8/11/2006 | Mercury | 0.09 | CONJUNCT | 39028.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 10/11/2006 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 39030.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 11/11/2006 | Neptune | 89.98 | square | 39031.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 21/11/2006 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39041.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 27/11/2006 | Mercury | 89.93 | square | 39046.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 6/12/2006 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 39055.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 18/12/2006 | Pluto | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39067.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 22/12/2006 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 0: 0 |

# 2007

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2007 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 7/ 1/2007 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 39087.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 4/ 2/2007 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 39116.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 8/ 2/2007 | Neptune | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 39120.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 10/ 2/2007 | Saturn | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 39122.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 23/ 2/2007 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 39134.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 26/ 2/2007 | Jupiter | 90.01 | square | 39137.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 3/ 3/2007 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 23: 0 |
| 5/ 3/2007 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 39145.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 17/ 3/2007 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 39157.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 19/ 3/2007 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 2:30 |
| 21/ 3/2007 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 30/ 3/2007 | VENUS | 90.02 | square | 39170.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 4/ 4/2007 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 39174.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 3/ 5/2007 | Mercury | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39203.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 11/ 5/2007 | Neptune | 89.99 | square | 39211.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 13/ 5/2007 | MARS | 90.02 | square | 39213.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 16/ 5/2007 | Saturn | 89.98 | square | 39216.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 21/ 5/2007 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 39221.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 5/ 6/2007 | Jupiter | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 39237.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 6/ 6/2007 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 39238.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 19/ 6/2007 | Pluto | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 39250.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 21/ 6/2007 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 18: 0 |
| 28/ 6/2007 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 39260.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 4/ 7/2007 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 28/ 7/2007 | Mercury | 90.01 | square | 39290.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 13/ 8/2007 | Neptune | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39306.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 15/ 8/2007 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 39308.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 18/ 8/2007 | VENUS | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39310.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 21/ 8/2007 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39314.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 22/ 8/2007 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39314.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 28/ 8/2007 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 10:45 |
| 9/ 9/2007 | Uranus | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 39333.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 11/ 9/2007 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 12:45 |
| 16/ 9/2007 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 39339.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 21/ 9/2007 | Pluto | 89.97 | square | 39344.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 21/ 9/2007 | Mercury | 90.08 | square | 39345.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 24/10/2007 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 39377.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 10/11/2007 | Mercury | 90.06 | square | 39395.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 13/11/2007 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 39398.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 24/11/2007 | Saturn | 89.99 | square | 39409.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 10/12/2007 | Uranus | 90.01 | square | 39424.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 17/12/2007 | Mercury | 179.91 | OPPOSITION | 39432.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 20/12/2007 | Pluto | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39435.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 22/12/2007 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 6: 0 |
| 23/12/2007 | Jupiter | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 39437.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 24/12/2007 | MARS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 39439.29 | GMT 19:00 |

# 2008

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2008 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 12/ 1/2008 | VENUS | 89.99 | square | 39457.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 19/ 1/2008 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 39465.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 6/ 2/2008 | Mercury | 0.04 | CONJUNCT | 39483.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 7/ 2/2008 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 3:30 |
| 11/ 2/2008 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39487.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 21/ 2/2008 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 3:15 |
| 24/ 2/2008 | Saturn | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39500.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 8/ 3/2008 | Uranus | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 39514.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 14/ 3/2008 | Mercury | 89.92 | square | 39519.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 19/ 3/2008 | Pluto | 90.01 | square | 39524.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 20/ 3/2008 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 6: 0 |
| 29/ 3/2008 | Jupiter | 90.01 | square | 39534.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 16/ 4/2008 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 39552.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 4/ 5/2008 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 39570.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 12/ 5/2008 | Neptune | 90.03 | square | 39579.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 29/ 5/2008 | Saturn | 89.99 | square | 39596.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 7/ 6/2008 | Mercury | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 39605.13 | GMT 15:00 |
| 8/ 6/2008 | MARS | 89.99 | square | 39605.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 9/ 6/2008 | VENUS | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39606.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 10/ 6/2008 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 39607.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 20/ 6/2008 | Pluto | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 39618.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 21/ 6/2008 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 4/ 7/2008 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 9/ 7/2008 | Jupiter | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39636.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 12/ 7/2008 | Mercury | 89.93 | square | 39639.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 29/ 7/2008 | Mercury | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39657.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 1/ 8/2008 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 10: 0 |
| 15/ 8/2008 | Neptune | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39673.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 16/ 8/2008 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 21:30 |
| 31/ 8/2008 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 39689.83 | GMT 8:00 |
| 4/ 9/2008 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 39693.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 13/ 9/2008 | Uranus | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39702.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 22/ 9/2008 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 15: 0 |
| 22/ 9/2008 | Pluto | 89.97 | square | 39712.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 6/10/2008 | Mercury | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 39726.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 19/10/2008 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 39738.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 24/10/2008 | Mercury | 89.95 | square | 39744.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 27/10/2008 | VENUS | 90.01 | square | 39747.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 15/11/2008 | Neptune | 90.01 | square | 39765.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 25/11/2008 | Mercury | 179.95 | OPPOSITION | 39776.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 5/12/2008 | MARS | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 39786.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 6/12/2008 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 39787.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 13/12/2008 | Uranus | 89.99 | square | 39793.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 21/12/2008 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 22/12/2008 | Pluto | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39802.63 | GMT 3:00 |

# 2009

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2/ 1/2009 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 39814.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 2/ 1/2009 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 20/ 1/2009 | Mercury | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39832.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 24/ 1/2009 | Jupiter | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39835.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 26/ 1/2009 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 7:45 |
| 9/ 2/2009 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 14:30 |
| 12/ 2/2009 | Neptune | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 39855.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 21/ 2/2009 | Mercury | 89.91 | square | 39863.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 8/ 3/2009 | Saturn | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 39879.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 13/ 3/2009 | Uranus | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 39883.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 20/ 3/2009 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 12: 0 |
| 21/ 3/2009 | Pluto | 90.00 | square | 39892.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 27/ 3/2009 | VENUS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 39898.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 31/ 3/2009 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 39901.63 | GMT 3:00 |
| 18/ 4/2009 | Mercury | 90.04 | square | 39919.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 3/ 5/2009 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 39934.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 15/ 5/2009 | Neptune | 89.99 | square | 39946.71 | GMT 5:00 |
| 18/ 5/2009 | Mercury | 0.07 | CONJUNCT | 39949.88 | GMT 9:00 |
| 12/ 6/2009 | Saturn | 90.01 | square | 39975.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 14/ 6/2009 | Uranus | 90.02 | square | 39977.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 21/ 6/2009 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 5: 0 |
| 23/ 6/2009 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 39985.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 25/ 6/2009 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 39988.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 4/ 7/2009 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 14/ 7/2009 | Mercury | 179.97 | OPPOSITION | 40006.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 22/ 7/2009 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 2:30 |
| 31/ 7/2009 | MARS | 90.03 | square | 40023.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 11/ 8/2009 | Mercury | 90.09 | square | 40034.75 | GMT 6:00 |
| 14/ 8/2009 | Jupiter | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 40038.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 17/ 8/2009 | VENUS | 89.97 | square | 40041.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 17/ 8/2009 | Neptune | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 40041.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 17/ 9/2009 | Uranus | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 40071.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 17/ 9/2009 | Saturn | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 40072.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 20/ 9/2009 | Mercury | 0.03 | CONJUNCT | 40074.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 22/ 9/2009 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 21: 0 |
| 25/ 9/2009 | Pluto | 89.99 | square | 40079.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 9/10/2009 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 40093.58 | GMT 2:00 |
| 5/11/2009 | Mercury | 179.94 | OPPOSITION | 40120.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 17/11/2009 | Neptune | 89.98 | square | 40133.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 23/11/2009 | Jupiter | 90.00 | square | 40138.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 16/12/2009 | Mercury | 89.97 | square | 40162.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 17/12/2009 | Uranus | 89.98 | square | 40162.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 19/12/2009 | Saturn | 90.00 | square | 40165.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 21/12/2009 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 18: 0 |
| 24/12/2009 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 40169.96 | GMT 11:00 |

# 2010

| DD/MM/YEAR | PLANET | ORB | ASPECT | DAY NO | TIME |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3/ 1/2010 | | | PERIGEE | | |
| 4/ 1/2010 | Mercury | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 40181.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 11/ 1/2010 | VENUS | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 40188.33 | GMT 20:00 |
| 15/ 1/2010 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 7: 0 |
| 29/ 1/2010 | MARS | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 40206.29 | GMT 19:00 |
| 31/ 1/2010 | Mercury | 89.99 | square | 40208.42 | GMT 22:00 |
| 14/ 2/2010 | Neptune | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 40222.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 15/ 2/2010 | Neptune | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 40222.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 28/ 2/2010 | Jupiter | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 40235.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 14/ 3/2010 | Mercury | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 40250.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 17/ 3/2010 | Uranus | 179.99 | OPPOSITION | 40252.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 20/ 3/2010 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 17: 0 |
| 22/ 3/2010 | Saturn | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 40257.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 24/ 3/2010 | Pluto | 89.99 | square | 40259.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 2/ 4/2010 | Mercury | 89.94 | square | 40269.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 28/ 4/2010 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 40295.17 | GMT 16:00 |
| 17/ 5/2010 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 40314.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 7/ 6/2010 | VENUS | 90.01 | square | 40334.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 9/ 6/2010 | Mercury | 90.03 | square | 40336.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 9/ 6/2010 | Jupiter | 90.02 | square | 40337.38 | GMT 21:00 |
| 18/ 6/2010 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 40346.46 | GMT 23:00 |
| 21/ 6/2010 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 11: 0 |
| 25/ 6/2010 | Pluto | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 40352.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 26/ 6/2010 | Saturn | 89.97 | square | 40353.67 | GMT 4:00 |
| 26/ 6/2010 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 11:45 |
| 28/ 6/2010 | Mercury | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 40356.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 4/ 7/2010 | | | APOGEE | | |
| 11/ 7/2010 | | | Solar Eclipse | | GMT 19:30 |
| 17/ 7/2010 | MARS | 89.97 | square | 40374.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 23/ 7/2010 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 40380.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 20/ 8/2010 | Neptune | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 40408.92 | GMT 10:00 |
| 3/ 9/2010 | Mercury | 0.05 | CONJUNCT | 40423.00 | GMT 12:00 |
| 21/ 9/2010 | Jupiter | 0.02 | CONJUNCT | 40440.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 21/ 9/2010 | Uranus | 0.01 | CONJUNCT | 40441.21 | GMT 17:00 |
| 23/ 9/2010 | | | EQUINOX | | GMT 3: 0 |
| 23/ 9/2010 | Mercury | 90.07 | square | 40442.96 | GMT 11:00 |
| 27/ 9/2010 | Pluto | 89.97 | square | 40447.04 | GMT 13:00 |
| 1/10/2010 | Saturn | 179.98 | OPPOSITION | 40450.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 17/10/2010 | Mercury | 179.92 | OPPOSITION | 40466.50 | GMT 0:00 |
| 29/10/2010 | VENUS | 0.00 | CONJUNCT | 40478.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 20/11/2010 | Neptune | 90.00 | square | 40500.79 | GMT 7:00 |
| 29/11/2010 | Mercury | 90.05 | square | 40510.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 20/12/2010 | Mercury | 0.07 | CONJUNCT | 40530.54 | GMT 1:00 |
| 21/12/2010 | | | Lunar Eclipse | | GMT 8: 0 |
| 21/12/2010 | Uranus | 90.00 | square | 40532.08 | GMT 14:00 |
| 21/12/2010 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 23: 0 |
| 22/12/2010 | | | SOLSTICE | | GMT 0: 0 |
| 26/12/2010 | Pluto | 180.00 | OPPOSITION | 40537.25 | GMT 18:00 |
| 29/12/2010 | Jupiter | 90.01 | square | 40539.79 | GMT 7:00 |

# 15
# Epilogue

You are now privy to the most valuable information you will ever experience in this lifetime. Information that's priceless, yet it's only priceless if you do your own work and understand the underlying geometric principle.

To take advantage of the knowledge I have imparted to you will initially require some hard work. You will have to become familiar with the ratios and special numbers of the universe. These ratios and numbers need to become second nature to you.

You will need:-

1. A computer system.
2. A long term daily data base of commodity and stock prices.
3. A data provider from which you can update your data base electronically.
4. A secluded working environment.
5. Charting and analysis software.

I have often heard people say, "As soon as I make some money from the market I will set myself up properly."

If you don't set yourself up properly in the beginning all you are doing is wasting time. Please don't put the cart before the horse. Every business enterprise has a set up cost, if you can't afford the cost then you can't afford to trade.

I've done my best to show you how it can be done, you must now do your best and take advantage. If you want to make it easy for yourself you will need a **CycleTrader**, there is no other program available that will do the job properly.

**Bryce Gilmore.**
**28th November 1997.**

**Caveat Emptor:**
Trading involves risk of loss. Bryce Gilmore or his assigns accepts no responsibility for your trading outcomes good or bad. The information provided in this text is not an invitation to trade. Contact your broker about trading.

On a day to day basis it will be most advantageous to follow between 10 and 15 markets. Try and study a cross section of markets which will give you a spread of opportunity.

**For instance:-**
SFE - Sydney Share Price Index - SPI
SFE - Three year bonds - YB
SFE - Ten Year bonds - XB
COMEX - Gold
COMEX - Silver
IMM - Australian dollar
IMM - Swiss Franc
IMM - Deutsche Mark
IMM - Japanese Yen
IMM - British Pound
CBOT - 10 year T-Bonds
CBOT - Soybeans
CBOT - Wheat
Stocks such as:-
BHP - Broken Hill
MIM - Mount Isa Mines
CBA - Commonwealth Bank
NAB - National Australia Bank

As each market makes new highs and lows you can explore the technical signals which could act as a reason why the current trend will reverse.
When you can sight odds on opportunities to trade against the prevailing trend you will get a jump start on the crowd. If you can't find a technical reason for a change in trend then only trade with the trend.

**Each day you must examine:-**

1. The **PATTERN** of the market.
2. The position of the **TREND** indicators.
3. The relationship of the long term **TIME** CYCLES.
4. The relationship of the medium term TIME CYCLES.
5. The relationship of the **PRICE** expansions and retracements.
6. The relationship of the Dynamic **VIBRATION** angles.

If you do all of these things opportunity will present itself time and time again.
**When opportunity is not present stay out of the market.....**

**In your spare time STUDY past market cycles and look for RHYTHM OPPORTUNITIES that maybe coming up. If you are prepared in advance with your timing signals you will find it a lot easier to pull the trigger at the right moment.**

**Try and get to understand the CHARACTERISTICS of the markets you are following.**

**Keep abreast of Commodity and Stock fundamental influences - I now watch the Bloomberg business channel on Foxtel whenever I'm in my office, it saves me reading the paper from cover to cover. When I lived in Los Angeles I used to watch their business channel.**

# IMPORTANT RATIOS AND SEQUENCES

| GEOMETRIC RATIOS | | HARMONIC RATIOS | | OTHER RATIOS | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1.000** | Expanding | **1.000** | Expanding | **1.000** | Expanding |
| **1.272** | root 1.618 | **1.414** | root 2 | **1.333** | |
| **1.618** | golden mean | **2.000** | root 4 | **1.500** | |
| **2.058** | 1.618x1.272 | **2.828** | root 8 | **1.732** | root 3 |
| **2.618** | 1.618x1.618 | **4.000** | root 16 | **2.236** | root 5 |
| **3.330** | 2.618x1.272 | 5.657 | root 32 | **2.449** | root 6 |
| 4.236 | 2.618x1.618 | 8.000 | root 64 | **2.646** | root 7 |
| 5.388 | 4.236x1.272 | | | **3.000** | root 9 |
| 6.854 | 4.236x1.618 | | | **5.000** | root 25 |
| 1.000 | Reciprocals | 1.000 | Reciprocals | 1.000 | Reciprocals |
| **0.786** | 1/1.272 | **0.707** | scacred cut | **0.750** | 3/4 |
| **0.618** | 1/1.618 | **0.500** | 1/root 4 | **0.667** | 2/3 |
| **0.486** | 1/2.058 | **0.354** | 1/root 8 | **0.577** | 1/root 3 |
| **0.382** | 1/2.618 | **0.250** | 1/4 | **0.447** | 1/root 5 |
| 0.300 | 1/3.330 | 0.177 | 1/7 | **0.408** | 1/root 6 |
| 0.236 | 1/4.236 | 0.125 | 1/8 | **0.333** | 1/3 |
| 0.186 | 1/5.388 | | | 0.200 | 1/5 |
| 0.146 | | | | 0.167 | 1/6 |

Ratios sequences are expanding or contracting

**Other ratios that can fit within the system**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1.902 | | 1.707 | 2nd Harmonic | 3.146 | PI |
| 0.526 | (1/1.902) | 2.414 | 3rd Harmonic | | |
| 0.809 | half 1.618 | 2.288 | (1.414x1.618) | 3.464 | twice 1.732 |
| 1.309 | half 2.618 | 0.874 | (1.414x0.618) | 4.472 | twice 2.236 |
| 3.236 | twice 1.618 | 0.293 | (1.000-0.707) | | |

The lesser degree ratios will become important only when cycles of price or time are measured over long periods.
When dealing with shorter time and price periods then use only the primary ratios as important to the immediate geometry, ie., 0.382, 0.50, 0.577, 0.618 et cetera.
In cases where the geometry is unclear check for "other ratios", ie., factors of ratios made up from ratios multiplied by other ratios. It is rare that a major change in trend will occur on this geometry, but it must be considered when all else does not provide the answer!!!

# IMPORTANT NUMBERS AND SEQUENCES

| Fibonacci Series | Lucas Series | Harmonic Series |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | 4 | 16 |
| 5 | 7 | 23 |
| 8 | 11 | 32 |
| 13 | 18 | 45 |
| 21 | 29 | 64 |
| **34** | **47** | **91** |
| **55** | **76** | **128** |
| **89** | **123** | **181** |
| **144** | **199** | **256** |
| **233** | **322** | **362** |
| **377** | **521** | **512** |
| **610** | **843** | **724** |
| **987** | **1365** | **1024** |
| **1597** | 2208 | 1448 |
| 2584 | 3573 | 2048 |
| 4182 | 5781 | 2896 |

**Fibonacci Multiples**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **89** | **233** | **377** |
| **178** | **466** | **754** |
| 267 | 699 | 1131 |
| 356 | 932 | 1508 |
| 445 | 1165 | 1885 |

Master Numbers
**385**
**5040**

Perimeter Pyramid
**3024**

Numbers of Fusion
**666**
**1080**
**1746**

Plato's Temple
**3168**

| Count | Squares of 144 | # | Gann Squares | # | Gann Cubes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **144** | 7 | 49 | 3 | 27 |
| 2 | **288** | 8 | 64 | 4 | 64 |
| 3 | **432** | 9 | 81 | 5 | 125 |
| 4 | **576** | 10 | 100 | 6 | **216** |
| 5 | **720** | 11 | 121 | 7 | **343** |
| 6 | **864** | 12 | **144** | 8 | **512** |
| 7 | **1008** | 13 | **169** | 9 | **729** |
| 8 | **1152** | 14 | **196** | 10 | **1000** |
| 9 | **1296** | 15 | **225** | 11 | **1331** |
| 10 | **1440** | 16 | **256** | 12 | **1728** |
| 11 | **1584** | 17 | **289** | 13 | 2197 |
| 12 | **1728** | 18 | **324** | 14 | 2744 |
| 13 | **1872** | 19 | **361** | 15 | 3375 |
| 14 | **2016** | 20 | **400** | 16 | 4096 |
| 15 | **2160** | 21 | **441** | 17 | 4913 |
| 16 | **2304** | 22 | 484 | 18 | 5832 |
| 17 | **2448** | 23 | 529 | 19 | 6859 |
| 18 | **2592** | 24 | **576** | 20 | 8000 |
| 19 | **2736** | 25 | **625** | 21 | 9261 |
| 20 | **2880** | 26 | 676 | 22 | 10648 |
| 21 | **3024** | 27 | **729** | 23 | 12167 |
| 22 | **3168** | 28 | 784 | 24 | 13824 |
| 23 | 3312 | 29 | **841** | 25 | 15625 |
| 24 | 3456 | 30 | 900 | 26 | 17576 |

**Divisions of the year In solar degrees**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1/5 | **72** |
| 1/4 | **90** |
| 1/3 | **120** |
| 2/5 | **144** |
| 1/2 | **180** |
| 0.618 | **223** |
| 2/3 | **240** |
| 0.707 | **255** |
| 3/4 | **270** |
| 4/5 | **288** |
| 5/6 | 300 |
| 7/8 | 315 |
| 1 | **360** |
| 6/5 | **432** |
| 5/4 | 450 |
| 4/3 | 480 |
| 1.414 | **509** |
| 1.500 | **540** |
| 1.618 | **582** |
| 1.667 | **600** |
| 1.707 | 615 |
| 1.732 | **624** |
| 1.750 | **630** |
| 2 | **720** |